



RomanianPod101.com



# Romanian

Beginner



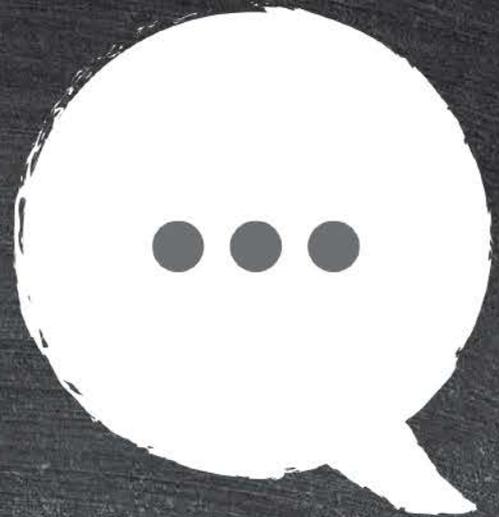
*Unabridged Edition*

**innovative** LANGUAGE

If you love the **Romanian** language,  
then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Romanian** Learning Program  
at **RomanianPod101.com**.

- Speak **Romanian** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses  
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android  
Device or Computer



Go to  
**RomanianPod101.com**  
and sign up for your

**FREE**

**Lifetime Account!**



RomanianPod101.com

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #1

# Investing in Some Romanian Fashions

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 1

## ROMANIAN

1. Andreea: Bună ziua, aş dori să văd nişte fuste.
2. Vânzătoare: Desigur, doriţi şi să probaţi?
3. Masanobu: Eu?! Nu, mulţumesc. Îi cumpăr prietenei mele. Aveţi ceva din piele?
4. Vânzătoare: Da, sunt la capătul coridorului.
5. Masanobu: Vă mulţumesc mult.
6. Vânzătoare: Dacă aveţi vreo întrebare, nu ezitaţi să mă întrebaţi.
7. Masanobu: Ah, doresc un coş de cumpărături.
8. Vânzătoare: Luaţi-l pe acesta.

## ENGLISH

1. Andreea: Hello, I'd like to see some skirts.
2. Salesperson: Sure, do you want to try them on?
3. Masanobu: Me?! No, thank you. I'm buying them for my girlfriend. Do you have any made out of leather?
4. Salesperson: Yes, they're at the end of the aisle.
5. Masanobu: Thank you very much.
6. Salesperson: If you have any questions, don't hesitate to ask.

CONT'D OVER

7. Masanobu: Oh, I want a shopping basket.
8. Salesperson: Take this one.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
zi	day	noun
a dori	want	verb
fustă	skirt	noun
a proba	try on	verb
a cumpăra	buy	verb
întrebare	question	noun
piele	leather	noun
capăt	end	noun
coridor	aisle	noun
ezita	hesitate	verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Astăzi lucrez toată ziua.</b> "Today I'm working the whole day."</p>	<p><b>Doresc.</b> "I want."</p>
<p><b>Această fustă este albastră.</b> "This skirt is blue."</p>	<p><b>Ea a probat toate hainele surorii ei.</b> "She tried on all her sister's clothes."</p>
<p><b>El vrea să cumpere o mașină rapidă.</b> "He wants to buy a fast car."</p>	<p><b>Ai vreo întrebare?</b> "Do you have any questions?"</p>

<p><b>Mașina aceea are scaune din piele.</b></p> <p>"That car has leather seats."</p>	<p><b>A ajuns la capătul răbdării.</b></p> <p>"He's reached the end of his tether."</p>
<p><b>Ce coridor frumos!</b></p> <p>"What a beautiful aisle!"</p>	<p><b>Nu este nevoie să eziți.</b></p> <p>"There is no need to hesitate."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***la capătul*** **"at the end of"**

**la** is a preposition and it means "at," while **capătul** is *capăt*, which can mean "head" or "end," with the definite article *-ul* to mean "the end."

This phrase is used when you want to indicate the location of a building, object, person etc.. As this is just a compound adverbial expression used to indicate concrete location of objects, buildings, people etc., there is no distinction between formal and informal usage. It's ok to use it in both informal and formal situations.

#### **For example:**

1. *Este o brutărie la capătul acestei străzi.*  
"There is a bakery at the end of this street."

### ***vreo întrebare*** **"any questions"**

**Vreo** is an indefinite pronoun and means "any" and **întrebare** means "question." So this phrase means just as it literally translates - "Any questions?" This phrase is used when you want to ask whether someone wants to know further information. It can be used in both formal and informal situations.

#### **For example:**

1. *Ai vreo întrebare?*  
"Do you have any questions?"

## GRAMMAR

## The Focus of This Lesson is Cases (Part 1)

***Bună ziua, aş dori să văd nişte fuste.***  
"Hello, I'd like to see some skirts."

***Eu?! Nu, mulţumesc. Îi cumpăr prietenei mele. Aveţi ceva din piele?***  
"Me?! No, thank you. I'm buying for my girlfriend. Do you have something made out of leather?"

***Da, sunt la capătul coridorului.***  
"Yes, they are at the end of the aisle."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use cases in Romanian
2. recognize various prepositions and the cases they determine
3. conjugate nouns and their case declension

---

### 1. How to use cases in Romanian

---

**The case is the form taken by the noun to express its syntactic function in a statement.**

The Romanian case represents a grammatical category associated to a noun, pronoun, adjective, numeral or article. It is used to express the syntactic function in a sentence of these elements or their relation to a process expressed by a verb.

In Romanian, there are five grammatical cases: nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, and vocative. You can find below the questions that the nouns used in each case respond to.

---

Case	Responds to
------	-------------

---

<i>Cazul nominativ</i> "Nominative Case"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>Cine? Ce?</i> "Who? What?"</li> <li>● <i>Cine este? Ce este?</i> "Who is? What is?"</li> <li>● <i>Care?</i> "Which?"</li> </ul>
<i>Cazul acuzativ</i> "Accusative Case"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>Ce? Pe cine?</i> "What? Who?"</li> <li>● <i>Despre cine/ce?</i> "About who/what?"</li> <li>● <i>De cine?</i> "By whom?"</li> <li>● <i>Pentru cine/ce?</i> "For whom/what?"</li> <li>● <i>La cine/ce?</i> "To whom/what?"</li> <li>● <i>De către cine?</i> "By whom?"</li> <li>● <i>Unde? De unde?</i> "Where? Where from?"</li> <li>● <i>Cum? Câț de?</i> "How?"</li> <li>● <i>Când? De când?</i> "When? From when?"</li> <li>● <i>Din ce cauză?</i> "Wherefore?"</li> <li>● <i>Cu ce scop?</i> "For what purpose?"</li> <li>● <i>Care? Ce fel de?</i> "Which? What kind of?"</li> </ul>
<i>Cazul genitiv</i> "Genitive Case"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>A, al, ai, ale cui?</i> "Whose?"</li> <li>● <i>Asupra cui?</i> "On whom?"</li> <li>● <i>Contra cui?</i> "Against whom?"</li> <li>● <i>Unde?</i> "Where?"</li> <li>● <i>Când?</i> "When?"</li> <li>● <i>Din cauza cui?</i> "Because of who?"</li> <li>● <i>În ce scop?</i> "For what purpose?"</li> </ul>
<i>Cazul dativ</i> "Dative Case"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <i>Cui?</i> "Whose? Whom?"</li> </ul>
<i>Cazul vocativ</i> "Vocative Case"	Not applicable

**In Romanian, the Nominative case is used to express the subject of action in a sentence. Therefore, the noun in nominative can respond to one of the questions *Cine?* "Who?" or *Ce?* "What?" (...is doing that action). Moreover, the questions *Cine este?* "Who is?" or *Ce este?* "What is?" can be used. In more particular cases, that of an appositional attribute in nominative, the question *Care?* "Which?" applies.**

In later lessons we'll introduce the rest of the cases in more detail. Please stay tuned for three more cases that will be discussed in detail (the accusative in lesson 6 and the genitive and dative in lesson 16).

**Let's see some sample sentences for the nominative case:**

1. *Andreea pune o întrebare.*  
"Andreea asks a question."
2. Question: *Cine?* "Who?"  
Answer: *Andreea* "Andreea;" (syntactic function = subject)
3. *Aceasta este o fustă.*  
"This is a skirt."
4. Question: *Ce este?* "What is that?"  
Answer: *o fustă* "a skirt;" (syntactic function = predicative)
5. *Prietenul meu, Masanobu, învață română.*  
"My boyfriend, Masanobu, learns Romanian."
6. Question: *Care?* "Which?"  
Answer: *Masanobu* "Masanobu;" (syntactic function = appositional attribute)

## 2. How to recognize various prepositions and the cases they determine

**Preposition in Romanian is the non-flexible part of the speech that links an attribute or an object (direct or indirect) to the word it determines.**

By form, prepositions can be:

<i>simple "basic"</i>	<i>compuse "compound"</i>
<i>pe</i> "on"	<i>de la</i> "from"
<i>sub</i> "under"	<i>pe lângă</i> "by"
<i>lângă</i> "next to"	<i>de lângă</i> "next to"
<i>către</i> "to"	<i>fără de</i> "without"
<i>contra</i> "opposite"	<i>până la</i> "until"
<i>cu</i> "with"	<i>de pe</i> "on"
<i>de</i> "by"	<i>de pe la</i> "from"
<i>fără</i> "without"	
<i>în</i> "in"	

---

între "between"

---

la "to"

---

până "to"

---

pentru "for"

---

peste "over"

---

**Some prepositions come from other parts of the speech.**

**Examples:**

1. **Articulate adverb** with a definite article: *înaintea* "before," *împotriva* "against," *împrejurul* "around," *dedesubtul* "underneath;"
2. **Nouns:** *grație* "thanks to;"
3. **Verbs (past participle):** *datorită, mulțumită* "thanks to."

**Prepositions in the Accusative Case**

Most basic and compound prepositions are constructed with nouns, pronouns, adjectives, or numerals in the accusative case.

1. *Nu merg acolo **fără tine.***  
"I'm not going over there **without you.**"

**Prepositions in the Genitive Case**

The following sentences accompany words in the Genitive case:

- *asupra* "over," *contra* "against:"

1. ***Asupra orașului** sunt nori negri.*  
"**Over the city** are black clouds."
2. *Lupta **contra lui Mihai** s-a sfârșit.*  
"The fight **against Mihai** is over."

- *înaintea, înapoia, dinaintea* (*prepoziții provenite din adverbe prin articulare*),"in front of, behind, before (prepositions from adverbs through articulations):"

1. *E liniștea dinaintea furtunii.*  
"This is the **calm before the storm.**"

## Prepositions in the Dative Case

These prepositions are required:

- coming from adverb with non-articulate form: *înaintea* "before," *asupra* "over."

1. *Bem un pahar de vin înaintea mesei.*  
"We drink a glass of wine **before the meal.**"

- derived from nouns: *grație* "thanks to"

1. **Grăție lui** am ajuns în România.  
"**Thanks to him** I got to Romania."

- coming from some adverbs: *asemenea* "similar (to)," *conform* "according (to)"

1. *Am răspuns asemenea ei.*  
"I've responded **similar to her.**"

- coming from some verbs: *datorită* "thanks to," *mulțumită* "thanks to."

1. *Am obținut rezultatele astea datorită profesorilor.*  
"I got these results **thanks to my teachers.**"

## 3. How to conjugate nouns and their case declension

---

**Declension of nouns indicates the number (singular or plural), case (nominative, accusative, dative, genitive or vocative) and gender (feminine, masculine or neutral).**

There are three types of declension according to the termination a noun has in nominative case, singular form, non-articulated.

### "Declension Types for Nouns" chart

---

**Nouns of declension I**

**Nouns of declension II**

**Nouns of declension III**

---

Proper or common nouns in feminine form ending in **a, ă, ea.**

Examples: *Ana, Maria, Andreea, macara* ("crane"), *sanda* ("sandal"), *masă* ("table"), *casă* ("house"), *stea* ("star"), *catifea* ("velvet")

Proper or common nouns in masculine form ended in **a or ă.**

Examples: *Zaharia, tată* ("father"), *popă* ("priest")

The noun *zi* or *ziuă* ("day").

Common nouns in masculine form ending in **u** (vowel or semivowel) or **i** (semivowel).

Examples: *codru* ("forest"), *erou* ("hero"), *leu* ("lion"), *ardei* ("paprika"), *tei* ("linden")

Common nouns in neutral form ended in **u** (vowel or semivowel) or **i** (vowel or semivowel), **o** or **a consonant.**

Examples: *teatru* ("theatre"), *cadou* ("present / gift"), *tablou* ("picture / painting"), *taxi* ("taxi"), *butoi* ("barrel"), *radio* ("radio"), *zero* ("zero"), *avion* ("airplane"), *tren* ("train")

Common nouns in masculine, feminine or neutral form ending in **e.**

Examples: *femeie* ("woman"), *frate* ("brother"), *nume* ("name"), *pește* ("fish")

The first five days of the week: *luni* ("Monday"), *marți* ("Tuesday"), *miercuri* ("Wednesday"), *joi* ("Thursday"), *vineri* ("Friday")

## "Nouns and Case Declension" chart

<b>Cazul</b> "Case"	<b>Masculin</b>	<b>Masculin</b>	<b>Feminin</b>	<b>Feminin</b>	<b>Neutru</b>	<b>Neutru</b>
	"Masculin"	"Masculin"	"Feminin"	"Feminin"	"Neutru"	"Neutru"
	<i>Singular</i> "Singular"	<i>Plural</i> "Plural"	<i>Singular</i> "Singular"	<i>Plural</i> "Plural"	<i>Singular</i> "Singular"	<i>Plural</i> "Plural"

<i>Nominati</i> V - <i>Acuzativ</i> "Nominative - Accusative"	<i>leul</i> "the lion"	<i>leii</i> "the lions"	<i>femeia</i> "woman"	<i>femeile</i> "women"	<i>avion</i> "airplane"	<i>avioane</i> "airplanes"
<i>Genitiv - Dativ</i> "Genitive - Dative"	<i>leului</i> "lion's"	<i>leilor</i> "lions'"	<i>femeii</i> "woman's"	<i>femeilor</i> "women's"	<i>avionului</i> "airplane's"	<i>avioanelor</i> "airplanes'"
<i>Vocativ</i> "Vocative"	<i>leule!</i> "lion!"	<i>Leilor!</i> "lions!"	<i>femeie!</i> "woman!"	<i>femeilor!</i> "women!"	<i>avionule!</i> "airplane!"	<i>avioanelor!</i> "airplanes!"

### Let's see some sample sentences (Nominative Case, nouns in different number and gender)

1. **Leii** stau în cușcă.  
"The lions stay in the cage."
2. **Femeia** locuiește în România.  
"The woman lives in Romania."
3. **Avionul** are o aripă avariată.  
"The airplane has a broken wing."

### Examples from the Dialogue

1. *Bună ziua, aș dori să văd niște fuste.*  
"Hello, I'd like to see some skirts."
2. *Eu?! Nu, mulțumesc. Îi cumpăr prietenei mele. Aveți ceva din piele?*  
"Me?! No, thank you. I'm buying for my girlfriend. Do you have something made out of leather?"
3. *Da, sunt la capătul coridorului.*  
"Yes, they are at the end of the aisle."

### Sample Sentences:

1. *Peisajele României sunt variate.*  
"The landscapes of Romania are diverse."
2. *O învăț pe Maria limba italiană.*  
"I am teaching Maria Italian."
3. *Îi adaug cafelei zahăr.*  
"I add sugar to the coffee."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Fashion in Romania

---

Fashion in Romania depends a lot on ideas, individuality and authenticity. Fashion, by definition, talks about change and is relevant not only to the clothes we wear. It has to do with illusion, a contribution to our well-being. Style is a reflection of personal choice and today's fashion is a reflection of personal style. Nowadays, men in Romania are increasingly interested in fashion. Lumbersexual is very widespread among young Romanians. Long beard, plaid shirt, boots and an unobtrusive look. Women in Romania are increasingly interested in fashion as well. They are following the trends from abroad. They listen to the principle: life is too short to wear dull clothes. Leaving the communist regime, access to the internet and opportunities to visit other countries helped the Romanians to refine their style, appearance, and exterior image. In the 90s, men discovered that it is absolutely normal to use a moisturizing cream and to be concerned about your own style, thus appeared the metrosexual. Along with hipster and lumbersexual, these are the strongest male trends in the last 30 years. Women often prefer to buy their clothes abroad, in places like Paris, Milan, and London. 30 years ago, women wore only what they could find in the shops. Since the fashion industry was underdeveloped, their clothing choices were simple, without any particular items to stand out. Today, their outfits range from eccentric and vivid to the classic of Coco Chanel.

### Useful expression

1. *Haina îl face pe om.*  
"Fine feathers make fine birds."

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #2

# An Invitation to a Romanian Party

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# 2

## ROMANIAN

1. Andreea: Alo, Ana, sunt Andreea. Ce mai faci?
2. Colegă din liceu: Bine, Andreea. De când nu am mai vorbit!
3. Andreea: Vreau să te invit la petrecerea de ziua mea de naștere.
4. Colegă din liceu: Ce drăguț din partea ta!
5. Andreea: Deci?!
6. Colegă din liceu: Sigur că vin, cu mare plăcere.
7. Andreea: Super, mulțumesc! Îți trimit invitația cu detaliile.
8. Colegă din liceu: Bine. De abia aștept!

## ENGLISH

1. Andreea: Hello, Ana, it's Andreea. How've you been?
2. Classmate from high-school: I'm fine, Andreea. We haven't talked in ages!
3. Andreea: I want to invite you to my birthday party.
4. Classmate from high-school: That's so nice of you!
5. Andreea: So?!
6. Classmate from high-school: Of course, I'd be very pleased to come.

CONT'D OVER

7. Andreea: Great, thank you! I'll send you the invitation along with the details.
8. Classmate from high-school: Ok, I can hardly wait.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
petrecere	party	noun
deci	therefore	adverb
a trimite	to send	verb
invita	invite	verb
mea	my	pronoun
drăguț	nice	adjective
invitație	invitation	noun
detaliu	detail	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Petrecerea a fost un succes.</b> "The party was a blast."</p>	<p><b>Ea m-a invitat la o petrecere de Crăciun.</b> "She invited me to a Christmas party."</p>
<p><b>Sâmbătă plouă, deci rămânem acasă.</b> "It's going to rain on Saturday, so we are staying home."</p>	<p><b>El a trimis 100 de mesaje.</b> "He sent 100 messages."</p>
<p><b>Ea m-a invitat la teatru.</b> "She invited me to see a play."</p>	<p><b>Geanta mea e în dormitor.</b> "My bag is in the bedroom."</p>

---

**El mi-a cumpărat un urs de pluș drăguț.**

"He bought me a cute teddy bear."

**Invitațiile de nuntă sunt gata.**

"The wedding invitations are ready."

---

**Fiecare detaliu contează.**

"Every detail matters."

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***De când nu am mai vorbit!***

**"We haven't talked in ages!"**

---

***De când*** is an adverb and means "since." ***Nu am mai vorbit*** means "we haven't talked." The expression literally means "Since we haven't talked."

Even though it might sound incomplete, it is usually used to express the surprise when you see someone you haven't seen in awhile. The expression can be used in both formal and informal situations.

**For example:**

1. *De când nu am mai vorbit, mi-am terminat studiile.*  
"Since we haven't talked, I've finished my studies."

***De abia aștept!***

**"I can hardly wait!"**

---

Another way to translate this sentence might be "I am looking forward to it." or "I cannot wait."

*De abia aștept* is used to express one's excitement about an upcoming event.

This expression can be used in informal and formal contexts.

**For example:**

1. *De abia aştept să vă văd.*  
"I am looking forward to seeing you."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Accepting and Rejecting Invitations

***Vreau să te invit la petrecerea de ziua mea de naştere.***  
"I want to invite you to my birthday party."

***Ce drăguţ din partea ta!***  
"That's so nice of you!"

***Sigur că vin, cu mare plăcere.***  
"Of course, I'll be very pleased to come."

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use phrases related to appreciating an invitation
2. use phrases related to accepting an invitation
3. use phrases related to declining an invitation

---

### 1. How to use phrases related to appreciating an invitation

---

Whatever you choose, to accept or decline an invitation, the first step is to thank the host. There are many ways to express the appreciation for being invited to various types of events (e.g. social, corporate etc.).

The most common phrases are these:

Invitation to	Formal	Informal
Informal events (e.g. birthday party, wedding, a trip with friends)	<i>Mulţumesc mult pentru invitaţie. Sună tare bine.</i> "Thanks a lot for the invitation. Sounds like fun."	<i>Ce drăguţ din partea ta!</i> "That's so nice of you!"

Formal events (e.g. corporate event, reception, academic conference, book release)	<p><i>Vă mulțumesc pentru invitație. Sunt onorat să fiu invitat la conferința dumneavoastră.</i></p> <p>"Thank you for your invitation. I am honored to be invited to your conference."</p>	-	(When invited to a corporate event, a formal voice is preferred.)
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---	-------------------------------------------------------------------

### Sample informal dialogue:

1. *Mihai: Organizez o seară de bowling mâine, ți-ar plăcea să vii?*  
"Mihai: I'm organizing a bowling night tomorrow, would you like to join?"
2. *Peter: Sigur! Sună foarte bine!*  
"Peter: Sure! That sounds like fun!"
3. *Mihai: Perfect, atunci ne vedem mâine la 5 după-amiază!*  
"Mihai: Alright, see you at 5PM tomorrow!"
4. *Peter: Sigur, pe mâine!*  
"Peter: Sure! See you tomorrow!"

## 2. How to use phrases related to accepting an invitation

After thanking for the invitation, you can express not just the joy of attending, but also your expectations for the event. In accepting an invitation, formal or informal, it is important to respond accordingly.

Invitation to	Formal	Informal	
Informal events (e.g. birthday party, wedding, a trip with friends)	<p><i>Sigur că vin, cu mare plăcere.</i></p> <p>"Of course, I'll be very pleased to come."</p>	<p><i>Super! Abia aștept!</i></p> <p>"Wow! I can't wait!"</p>	
Formal events (e.g. corporate event, reception, academic conference, book release)	<p><i>Confirm prin acest mesaj prezența mea. Cu deosebită considerație,</i></p> <p><i>Andreea Ionescu</i></p> <p>"I hereby confirm my attendance. Sincerely, Andreea Ionescu"</p>	-	(When responding to a formal invitation, formal speech will be used.)

### 3. How to use phrases related to declining an invitation

---

Turning down an invitation will always be a sensitive matter that requires, in any language, a fine balance between a firm response and a polite manner that doesn't offend the host. Giving an excuse will assure the host of your good intentions toward him.

---

Invitation to	Formal	Informal
Informal events (e.g. birthday party, wedding, a trip with friends)	<i>Îmi pare foarte rău, dar nu am cum să vin joi seara, mi-am făcut deja alte planuri.</i> "I am terribly sorry, but I cannot go on Thursday night because I've already made other plans."	<i>Aș vrea să vin, dar am de lucru până târziu.</i> "I want to go, but I have to work late."
Formal events (e.g. corporate event, reception, academic conference, book release)	<i>Îmi pare rău să vă anunț că nu pot participa, din cauza unui angajament prealabil.</i> <i>Cu stimă,</i> <i>Mihai Stamate</i> "I regret to inform you that I won't be able to attend due to a prior commitment. Kind regards, Mihai Stamate"	-  (When replying to a business acquaintance, the tone of your response will be much more formal than one for a close friend.)

---

#### Examples from the Dialogue

1. *Vreau să te invit la petrecerea de ziua mea de naștere.*  
"I want to invite you to my birthday party."
2. *Ce drăguț din partea ta!*  
"That's so nice of you!"
3. *Sigur că vin, cu mare plăcere.*  
"Of course, I'll be very pleased to come."

#### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *S-ar putea să fiu ocupată. Te voi anunța mai târziu.*  
"I might be busy. I'll let you know later."
2. *Da, mulțumesc. Ar fi minunat.*  
"Yes, thank you. That would be wonderful."
3. *Îmi pare foarte rău. Sunt ocupat în seara asta.*  
"I am terribly sorry. I am busy tonight."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Romanian Holidays

---

Dragobete is a celebration with Dacian origins celebrated by Romanians on February 24th. The holiday of Dragobete is considered to be the equivalent of Valentine's Day, a celebration of love.

Mărțișor is another Romanian celebration. Mărțișor celebrates the arrival of spring, on March 1st. On this day, men give women small zoomorphic amulets or jewels tied by two red and white strings with hanging tassel, as symbols of friendship, love, appreciation and respect.

Christmas is the second biggest Christian holiday in Romania, after Easter. It is celebrated on the 25th of December. On Christmas Eve, December 24th, people decorate their Christmas trees and children go out caroling from house to house, getting sweets, fruits and occasionally money. People also slaughter a pig that's been bred and nurtured throughout the year. This is based off an old tradition. The meat it is further used to prepare food specialities for Christmas such as sausages or caltaboș (a Romanian specialty similar to the black pudding). Many still practice this pastime in the Romanian countryside.

### Useful expression:

1. *Sărbători fericite!*  
"Happy Holidays!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #3

# Do You Like Romanian Food?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 3

## ROMANIAN

1. Andreea: Masanobu, îți place mâncarea românească?
2. Masanobu: Da, îmi place foarte mult.
3. Andreea: Ce-ți place cel mai mult?
4. Masanobu: Sarmalele, ciorba de legume și papanăși.
5. Andreea: Mănânci deseori mâncare românească?
6. Masanobu: Da, îmi place să merg cu prietenii la restaurantul "La Mama."

## ENGLISH

1. Andreea: Masanobu, do you like Romanian food?
2. Masanobu: Yes, I like it very much.
3. Andreea: What do you like most?
4. Masanobu: Sarmale, vegetable soup, and papanăși.
5. Andreea: Do you often eat Romanian food?
6. Masanobu: Yes, I like to go with my friends to the restaurant "La Mama."

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
mâncare	food	noun

sarmale	sarma	noun
legumă	vegetable	noun
prieten	friend	noun
restaurant	restaurant	noun
ciorbă	soup	noun
papanas	donut	noun
deseori	often	adverb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Voi pregăti ceva bun de mâncare pentru prietenii mei.</b></p> <p>"I will cook a nice meal for my friends."</p>	<p><b>Am comandat multă mâncare.</b></p> <p>"I ordered a lot of food."</p>
<p><b>Am mâncat sarmale de Crăciun.</b></p> <p>"I ate stuffed cabbage on Christmas Day."</p>	<p><b>Am cumpărat legume ieftine.</b></p> <p>"I bought cheap vegetables."</p>
<p><b>El este prietenul meu cel mai bun.</b></p> <p>"He is my best friend."</p>	<p><b>Restaurantul meu favorit este Subway.</b></p> <p>"My favorite restaurant is Subway".</p>
<p><b>Nu merg la restaurant.</b></p> <p>"I'm not going to the restaurant."</p>	<p><b>Atmosfera restaurantului a atras mulți clienți în ultima vreme.</b></p> <p>"The atmosphere of the restaurant has drawn a lot of customers lately."</p>
<p><b>Ciorba de burtă e preferata mea.</b></p> <p>"The tripe soup is my favorite."</p>	<p><b>În Brașov sunt cei mai buni papanași.</b></p> <p>"In Brașov there are the best papanashi."</p>

---

**M-am gândit deseori la ea.**

"I've often thought about her."

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

**Îți place...?**

**"Do you like...?"**

---

A *plăcea* is the Romanian verb for "to like." This verb has only one possible form, **place**, in present tense, and is preceded by the pronouns in the dative. **Îți** means "you" (dative case) and *place* means "like." So this phrase literally means "you like."

The expression can be used when someone is trying to find out what the interlocutor thinks about: the food they are having, the movie they are watching, the present offered or other experiences they are sharing. This phrase can be used in an informal context: between friends, family, etc. The formal form would be: *Vă place...?* which also means "Do you like...?"

**For example:**

1. *Îți place să joci tenis?*  
"Do you like to play tennis?"

**A mânca deseori...**

**"To often eat..."**

---

**A mânca** is the Romanian verb for "to eat" in its infinitive form while **deseori** means "often," therefore this would translate as "to eat often." *Deseori* is an adverb and refers here to the verb "to eat."

This key vocab (any verb + the *deseori* adverb) is used when someone wants to indicate the occurrence of that action-if it is happening repeatedly and how frequently. The opposite word (adverb) for expressing the frequency of an action is *rareori* ("rarely / seldom").

**For example:**

1. *Eu mănânc deseori înghețată.*  
"I often eat ice cream."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Cooking Instructions

***Mănânci deseori mâncare românească?***  
"Do you often eat Romanian food?"

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use verbs to describe the action of pouring liquids
2. use verbs to describe the action of preparing ingredients
3. use verbs to describe the action of cooking food

---

### 1. How to use verbs to describe the action of pouring liquids

When it comes to describing the action of pouring liquid, English language offers a variety of verbs, such as "pour," "gush," "glug," "drip," or "dribble."

In Romanian, the verb ***a turna*** "to pour" is used in most cases when referring to moving a liquid from one container to another.

Also, especially important for cooking instruction, the verb ***a picura*** "to drip" may be used. This usually suggests that a smaller amount of liquid is poured, drop by drop.

---

Present		Past		Future	
<i>Eu torn.</i> "I pour."	<i>Noi turnăm.</i> "We pour."	<i>Eu am turnat.</i> "I poured."	<i>Noi am turnat.</i> "We poured."	<i>Eu voi turna.</i> "I will pour."	<i>Noi vom turna.</i> "We will pour."

<i>Eu picur.</i> "I drip."	<i>Noi picurăm.</i> "We drip."	<i>Eu am picurat.</i> "I dripped."	<i>Noi am picurat.</i> "We dripped."	<i>Eu voi picura.</i> "I will drip."	<i>Noi vom picura.</i> "We will drip."
<i>Tu torni.</i> "You pour."	<i>Voi turnați.</i> "You pour."	<i>Tu ai turnat.</i> "You poured."	<i>Voi ați turnat.</i> "You poured."	<i>Tu vei turna.</i> "You will pour."	<i>Voi veți turna.</i> "You will pour."
<i>Tu picuri.</i> "You drip."	<i>Voi picurați.</i> "You drip."	<i>Tu ai picurat.</i> "You dripped."	<i>Voi ați picurat.</i> "You dripped."	<i>Tu vei picura.</i> "You will drip."	<i>Voi veți picura.</i> "You will drip."
<i>El / ea toarnă.</i> "He/She/It pours."	<i>Ei / ele toarnă.</i> "They pour."	<i>El /ea a turnat.</i> "He/She/It poured."	<i>Ei / ele au turnat.</i> "They poured."	<i>El/ ea va turna.</i> "He/She/It will pour."	<i>Ei/ ele vor turna.</i> "They will pour."
<i>El / ea picură.</i> "He/She/It drips."	<i>Ei / ele picură.</i> "They drip."	<i>El /ea a picurat.</i> "He/She/It dripped."	<i>Ei / ele au picurat.</i> "He/She/It dripped."	<i>El/ ea va picura.</i> "He/She/It will drip."	<i>Ei/ ele vor picura.</i> "They will drip."

In recipes, when describing actions of preparing ingredients or cooking, the Romanian language uses the **passive-reflexive construction**: *Se toarnă* which translates as "It is poured."

1. *Uleiul se toarnă treptat.*  
"Oil is poured slowly."
2. *Siropul se toarnă în fir subțire.*  
"Syrup is poured gradually."
3. *Se picură ulei de măsline pe pâinea cu usturoi.*  
"A few drops of olive oil are added to the garlic bread."

It is worth mentioning that in Romanian the verb *a turna* is used also for flour. Even though flour is not a liquid, it is considered a "continuous matter" that flows, like rain. For example, *Se toarnă făina în ploaie* is an expression that means "Flour is sprinkled," but literally it translates as "Flour is poured in rain."

## 2. How to use verbs to describe the action of preparing ingredients

---

The main difference between English and Romanian when describing the action of preparing ingredients or cooking is that while in English directions would commonly use the imperative form, in Romanian indications are given using the **passive-reflexive construction**. Same thing applies for an instruction manual.

In the passive-reflexive construction, the grammatical subject suffers the action made by an unknown agent.

### Examples:

-Active

1. *Bucătarul taie morcovii cubulețe.*  
"The cook dices the carrots."

-Passive

1. *Morcovii sunt tăiați cubulețe de către bucătar.*  
"The carrots are diced by the cook."

-Passive-reflexive

1. *Morcovii se taie cubulețe.*  
"The carrots are diced."

**Here are some of the verbs used to describe the action of preparing ingredients:**

<b>Romanian</b>		<b>English</b>
Infinitive	Passive-reflexive	Infinitive
<i>a tăia</i>	<i>se taie</i>	"to cut"
<i>a tăia cubulețe</i>	<i>se taie cubulețe</i>	"to dice"
<i>a toca</i>	<i>se toacă</i>	"to mince" "to chop"
<i>a bate</i>	<i>se bate (sg.)/ se bat (pl.)</i>	"to beat"
<i>a topi</i>	<i>se topește (sg.)/ se topesc (pl.)</i>	"to melt"

<i>a decoji</i>	<i>se decojește (sg.) / se decojesc (pl.)</i>	"to peel"
<i>a amesteca</i>	<i>se amestecă</i>	"to stir"
<i>a tăia în felii</i>	<i>se taie în felii</i>	"to slice"
<i>a umple</i>	<i>se umple (sg.) / se umplu</i>	"to stuff"
<i>a strecura</i>	<i>se strecoară</i>	"to strain"
<i>a unge</i>	<i>se unge (sg.) / se ungu (pl.)</i>	"to grease"

### Sample sentences:

1. *Ceapa se taie mărunt.*  
"The onion is chopped small."
2. *Untul se topește la foc mic.*  
"The butter is melted in low heat."
3. *Roșiile se taie în felii subțiri.*  
"The tomatoes are sliced thinly."

### 3. How to use verbs to describe the action of cooking

Modal verbs in Romanian are auxiliary verbs that express possibility and they are followed by another verb in conjunctive, infinitive, participle or supine form.

#### Examples of modal verbs:

*a fi* - "to be"

*a avea* - "to have"

*a putea* - "can"

*a da* - "to give"

*a trebui* - "must"

*a se cuveni* - "should"

*a se părea* - "to seem"

1. *Înainte **să dea în fiert**, se oprește focul.*  
"Before reaching the boiling point, turn off the heat."
2. *Dacă focul e prea mare, sarmalele **se pot arde**.*  
"If the heat is too high, the sarmale might get burned."

Here are some of the verbs used to describe the action of cooking

<b>Romanian</b>		<b>English</b>
Infinitive	Passive-reflexive	Infinitive
<i>a frige</i>	<i>se frige(sg.)/ se frig (pl.)</i>	"to roast"
<i>a coace</i>	<i>se coace(sg.)/ se coc (pl.)</i>	"to bake"
<i>a coace</i>	<i>se coace(sg.)/ se coc (pl.)</i>	"to broil"
<i>a face piure</i> <i>a pasa</i>	<i>se face piure (sg.)/ se fac piure (pl.)</i> <i>Se pasează</i>	"to puree"
<i>a prăji (în ulei)</i>	<i>se prăjește (sg.)/ se prăjesc (pl.)</i>	"to fry"
<i>a găti la aburi</i>	<i>se gătește la aburi (sg.)/ se gătesc la aburi (pl.)</i>	"to steam"
<i>a fierbe</i>	<i>se fierbe (sg.)/ se fierb (pl.)</i>	"to boil"
<i>a marina</i>	<i>se marinează</i>	"to marinate"

### Sample sentences

1. *Se fierbe supa 30 de minute.*  
"The soup is boiled for 30 minutes."
2. *La final se pasează cartofii.*  
"At the end, the potatoes are pureed."
3. *Carnea se las la marinat până a doua zi.*  
"The meat is left to marinate until the next day."

## Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Ce-ți place cel mai mult?*  
"What do you like most?"
2. *Mănânci deseori mâncare românească?*  
"Do you often eat Romanian food?"
3. *Da, îmi place să merg cu prietenii la restaurantul "La Mama."*  
"Yes, I like to go with my friends to the restaurant "La Mama.""

## Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Toate legumele se taie mărunt pentru a face sarmale.*  
"All the vegetables are chopped in order to make stuffed cabbage."
2. *Ciorba se face din tot felul de legume.*  
"The soup is made of all kinds of vegetables."
3. *Friptura de miel se face la cuptor.*  
"The lamb roast is made in the oven."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Romanian cuisine

---

Romanian cuisine can be defined as a whole, but if you look closely-at the structure of the meals, the technology of realization, the association of raw materials or finished products-there can be distinct differences in cuisine found across the country. Each region has a specific way that has been maintained, complemented, and enriched both in quality and arrangement.

*Sarmale* is made from minced meat (usually beef, pig, calf or a combination of these), rice, onion, salt, and various spices (pepper, different herbs, onion, garlic, etc.) mixed together and then rolled into pickled cabbage leaves. This combination is then boiled for a few hours. There are innumerable variants: with meat, vegetarian, different seasoning, etc. *Sarmale* can be served with side dishes, such as *polenta* or bread, or it can be served "chilled" with yoghurt, cream, and horseradish.

*Ciorbă* "soup" contains predominantly root vegetables (such as carrots and celery) and other vegetables and fresh herbs (green / yellow pea pods, pumpkin, cabbage, green salad, leeks, tomatoes, parsley, etc.). It has a low oil content and no roasted onions, making *Ciorbă* a very low calorie meal good for any time of day, including a

light dinner.

*Drobul de miel* is a traditional lamb dish made during Easter. The main ingredients are lamb's intestines (liver, lungs, heart and kidneys), green herbs (green onion, dill, parsley), garlic, lemon, and eggs (raw and cooked). Boiled and chopped marmalades are mixed with other ingredients and spices (mostly salt and pepper).

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Poftă bună!*  
"Enjoy your meal!"  
"Bon appetit!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #4

# Reserving a Table at a Romanian Restaurant

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 4

## ROMANIAN

1. Angajat restaurant: Bună ziua, La Mama. Cu ce vă pot ajuta?
2. Masanobu: Bună ziua. Aș dori să fac o rezervare, vă rog.
3. Angajat restaurant: Desigur, domnule. Când și la ce oră, vă rog?
4. Masanobu: În seara aceasta, la 7 (șapte).
5. Angajat restaurant: Îmi pare rău domnule, dar este complet rezervat în seara aceasta până la opt.
6. Masanobu: În acest caz, la ora 8 (opt) este bine.
7. Angajat restaurant: Foarte bine. Și câte persoane vor fi?
8. Masanobu: 5 (cinci) persoane.

## ENGLISH

1. Restaurant clerk: Hello, La Mama. How can I help you?
2. Masanobu: Hello. I want to make a reservation, please.
3. Restaurant clerk: Of course, sir. When and at what hour, please?
4. Masanobu: Tonight at 7.
5. Restaurant clerk: I'm sorry sir, but we are fully booked tonight until eight.

CONT'D OVER

6. Masanobu: In that case, 8 o'clock is fine.
7. Restaurant clerk: Very good. And how many persons will there be?
8. Masanobu: Five people.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a ruga	to ask, to pray	verb
a ajuta	help	verb
desigur	sure, of course	adverb
rău	bad	adverb
până	until	preposition
persoană	person	noun
caz	case	noun
complet	complete	verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Te rog mult.</b> "(I) ask you a lot."</p>	<p><b>Scopul ei în viață a fost să ajute alte persoane.</b> "Her purpose in life was to help other people."</p>
<p><b>Desigur. Mă voi ocupa de aceasta.</b> "Of course I will look after it."</p>	<p><b>Desigur că vă ajut.</b> Of course I will help you.</p>
<p><b>Îmi pare foarte rău!</b> "I'm really sorry!"</p>	<p><b>Maria trebuie să fie aici până la ora 5 (cinci).</b> "Maria has to be here until 5."</p>

<p><b>Nu primești desert până nu-ți termini cina.</b></p> <p>"No dessert for you until you finish your dinner."</p>	<p><b>O persoană.</b></p> <p>"One person."</p>
<p><b>Două persoane.</b></p> <p>"Two people."</p>	<p><b>Este un caz real.</b></p> <p>"It's a real case."</p>
<p><b>Studiul e complet.</b></p> <p>"The study is complete."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***Cu ce vă pot ajuta?***  
**"How can I help you?"**

**Cu** is a preposition that means "with." **Ce** is an interrogative pronoun that means "what." Together, they form the subordinating conjunction *cu ce*. **Vă** is a second-person plural pronoun, in unstressed dative form, that means "you." **Pot** is the first-person singular present indicative form of the verb *a putea* - "can." **Ajuta**, here as the infinitive form, means "to help." Literally, the expression means "What can I help you with?"

You might hear this question asked in a customer service setting. The expression is formal speech. If *vă* is replaced with the second-person singular form *te*, the meaning is the same, but it's a rather rude way of addressing customers, clients or guests.

### **For example:**

1. *Cu ce vă pot ajuta pentru organizarea cinei festive?*  
 "How can I help you to organize the festive dinner?"

***În acest caz...***  
**"In that case..."**

**În** is a simple preposition that means "in." **Acest** is a demonstrative pronoun, near in time and distance, meaning "this." **Caz** is translated as "case." The expression means "in this case," both literally and figuratively.

*În acest caz* is used when there are multiple possible situations, or cases, and the speaker is referring to a specific one. It can be used in both formal and informal speech.

### For example:

1. *În acest caz, reanunțăm la rezervarea făcută.*  
"In that case, we are canceling our reservation."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Adverbs of Time Used in Questions

***Bună ziua. Aș dori să fac o rezervare, vă rog.***  
"Hello. I want to make a reservation, please."

***Desigur, domnule. Când și la ce oră, vă rog?***  
"Of course, sir. When and at what hour, please?"

***În seara aceasta, la 7 (șapte).***  
"Tonight at 7."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use the most frequently used adverbs of time
2. formulate questions using phrases such as "when" and "what hour"
3. discuss history using phrases such as "what year?"

---

### 1. How to use the most frequently utilized adverbs of time

---

The adverb of time answers the question *când* "when."

The adverb of time does not decline and does not conjugate but can be:

**Simple:** *azi* "today," *mâine* "tomorrow," *acum* "now," *ieri* "yesterday"

**Composed:** *mâine-seară* "tomorrow night," *alaltăieri* "the day before yesterday," *azi-noapte* "last night," *după-amiază* "afternoon"

The most frequently used adverbs of time are: *acum* "now," *atunci* "then," *astăzi* "today," *ieri* "yesterday," *târziu* "late," *deveme* "early," *odată* "once," *îndată* "soon," *totdeauna* "always," *când* "when," *deocamdată* "for now."

### Let's see some sample sentences

1. *Mâine mergem la cumpărături.*  
"Tomorrow we are going shopping."
2. *Azi-noapte nu am putut dormi.*  
"Last night I couldn't sleep."
3. *Vin îndată.*  
"I'm coming soon."

## 2. How to make questions using phrases such as "when" and "what hour"

---

In Romanian there is no formal expression of the interrogative. You just change the tone of your voice from an affirmative sentence into the interrogative.

1. *Când a plecat?*  
"When did she leave?"
2. *Cât este ceasul?*  
"What hour is it?"

### Let's see some sample sentences

1. *Când vii acasă?*  
"When are you coming home?"
2. *La ce oră începe spectacolul?*  
"At what hour does the show start?"
3. *Când e ziua ta?*  
"When is your birthday?"

## 3. How to discuss history with phrases such as "what year?"

---

When using the adverbs of time to express historical information, there are two

important aspects to consider. One is the time orientation (past, present, future, or neutral) and the other is degrees of comparison.

### "Time orientation" chart

<b><i>Orientarea temporală</i></b> "Time orientation"	<b><i>Trecut</i></b> "Past"	<b><i>Prezent</i></b> "Present"	<b><i>Viitor</i></b> "Future"	<b><i>Neutru</i></b> "Neutral"
<b><i>Exemple de adverbe de timp</i></b> "Examples of adverbs of time"				<i>dimineața</i> "in the morning"
	<i>ieri</i> "yesterday"			<i>după-amiază</i> "afternoon"
	<i>alaltăieri</i> "(the) other day"	<i>azi</i> "today"	<i>mâine</i> "tomorrow"	<i>târziu</i> "late"
	<i>anul trecut</i> "last year"	<i>acum</i> "now"	<i>mâine-seară</i> "tomorrow night"	<i>atunci</i> "then"
	<i>de demult</i> "long time ago"			<i>deocamdată</i> "for now"
				<i>când</i> "when"

### "Degrees of comparison" chart \*

<b><i>Tipuri de grade de comparație</i></b> "Types of degrees of comparison"	<b><i>Pozitiv</i></b> "Positive"	<b><i>Comparativ</i></b> "Comparative"	<b><i>Superlativ-relativ</i></b> "Superlative - relative"

<b>Exemple de adverbe de timp</b> <b>"Examples of adverbs of time"</b>	<i>târziu</i> "late"	<i>Superioritate</i> "Superiority:" <i>mai târziu</i> "later"	<i>Superioritate</i> "Superiority:" <i>cel mai târziu</i> "the latest"
		<i>Egalitate</i> "Equality:" <i>la fel de târziu</i> "just as late"	<i>Inferioritate</i> "Inferiority:" <i>cel mai puțin târziu</i> "the least late"
		<i>Inferioritate</i> "Inferiority:" <i>mai puțin târziu</i> "less late"	<i>Absolut</i> "Absolute:" <i>foarte târziu</i> "very late"

\* Not all adverbs of time support degrees of comparison (e.g. tomorrow, now, yesterday).

### Here are some sample sentences

1. *Am ajuns acolo anul trecut.*  
"I arrived there last year."
2. *Mi-a zis că vine mai târziu.*  
"He told me that he will come later."
3. *Vom merge acolo foarte devreme.*  
"We will go there very early."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Bună ziua. Aș dori să fac o rezervare, vă rog.*  
"Hello. I want to make a reservation, please."
2. *Desigur, domnule. Când și la ce oră, vă rog?*  
"Of course, sir. When and at what hour, please?"
3. *În seara aceasta, la 7 (șapte).*  
"Tonight at 7."

### Sample Sentences:

1. *Plouă acum?*  
"Is it raining now?"
2. *Mergem mâine în excursie?*  
"Are we going on the trip tomorrow?"
3. *Muncești azi?*  
"Are you working today?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Romanian values

---

The current image of the family in Romanian society is that of an institution that preserves traditions and values. It is an institution that is developing very slowly and with great difficulty. The modern family is increasingly conditioned by socioeconomic changes, but it is also the most stable social institution. The Romanians' attachment to the family is very high, occupying the first place in the hierarchy of social values and, at the same time, offering the greatest satisfaction. The Romanian identity: distinguishes what Romanians have as a distinct people from other national communities; reflects the specific way in which they build their culture and organize their private and public lives; determines their particular way of responding to the universal constants of culture-clothing, food, habitation, religion, game, art, communication, language.

Regarding religion in Romania, most people (both young and old) are considered religious. By comparison, the elders tend to be more likely to be considered religious people. The share of those who are atheist is very small in both age groups. In Romania there are officially 18 religions recognised. The Eastern Orthodox Church is the largest religious denomination in Romania, followed by Protestantism and Catholicism.

### Useful expression

1. *familia mea*  
"my family"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #5

# Ordering a Delicious Romanian Meal

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

# 5

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Bună ziua, aş dori o masă pentru prânz, vă rog.
2. Chelner: Desigur, poftiți pe aici.
3. Masanobu: Aş dori să mănânc ceva de prânz.
4. Chelner: Foarte bine. Doriți un aperitiv?
5. Masanobu: Da, aş vrea o salată.
6. Chelner: Ce altceva v-ar plăcea?
7. Masanobu: Aş vrea nişte supă. Aveți vreo recomandare?
8. Chelner: Sigur, specialitatea de astăzi este supa de pui cu legume.
9. Masanobu: Doresc supă și un pahar de vin.
10. Chelner: Am înțeles. Vă mulțumesc, domnule!

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: Hello, I'd like a table for lunch, please.
2. Waiter: Certainly, right this way.
3. Masanobu: I'd like to have something good to eat for lunch.
4. Waiter: Great. Would you like a starter?
5. Masanobu: Yes, I'd like a salad.

CONT'D OVER

6. Waiter: What else would you like?
7. Masanobu: I'd like some soup. Do you have any recommendations?
8. Waiter: Sure, today's special is chicken soup with vegetables.
9. Masanobu: I'll have that and a glass of wine.
10. Waiter: Understood, thank you sir!

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
prânz	lunch	noun
a pofti	to receive	verb
aperitiv	appetizer	noun
salată	salad	noun
supă	soup	noun
altceva	anything else, something else	pronoun
recomandare	recommendation	noun
specialitate	specialty	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Ce ai mâncat astăzi la prânz?</b>            "What did you eat for lunch today"?</p>	<p><b>Prefer să mănânc prânzul singur în parc.</b>            I prefer to eat lunch on my own in the park.</p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<p><b>Prefer să mănânc prânzul singur în parc.</b></p> <p>I prefer to eat lunch on my own in the park.</p>	<p><b>Ea pofteste o prăjitură.</b></p> <p>"She is craving for a cake."</p>
<p><b>Ea pofteste o prăjitură.</b></p> <p>She receives a cake.</p>	<p><b>Aș dori un aperitiv, deși sunt la dietă.</b></p> <p>"I would like an appetizer, although I am on a diet."</p>
<p><b>După ce a mâncat carne câteva zile, el se putea gândi doar la salată.</b></p> <p>"After eating meat for several days, he could only think about salad."</p>	<p><b>Îmi puteți aduce altă supă, vă rog, aceasta este rece.</b></p> <p>"Could you please bring me another soup, this one is cold."</p>
<p><b>Ai încercat și altceva?</b></p> <p>"Did you also try anything else?"</p>	<p><b>Aveți și altceva în afară de carne?</b></p> <p>"Do you have anything else besides meat?"</p>
<p><b>Aș dori să aplic pentru o bursă, îmi puteți scrie o scrisoare de recomandare?</b></p> <p>"I would like to apply for a scholarship, can you write me a letter of recommendation?"</p>	<p><b>Ați putea să îmi spuneți care este specialitatea zilei?</b></p> <p>"Could you tell me what is the specialty of the day?"</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **Poftiți**

**"Please, go ahead"**

**Poftiți** is the formal/ plural imperative form of the verb *a pofti* which means, among other things, "to ask, to bid, to call in, to invite, to request, to want, etc."

*Poftiți* is used in polite or formal commands such as "Step this way!" or "That way." When offering something, it means "Here you are." or "There you are." The expression is a formal variation.

**For example:**

1. *Poftiți salata cerută!*  
"Here is your salad!"

***Aveți vreo recomandare?***  
**"Do you have any recommendation?"**

---

***Aveți*** is the interrogative formal/ plural form of the verb *a avea* - "to have." ***Vreo*** is an indefinite pronoun that means "any, or some." The meaning of ***recomandare*** is recommendation. The expression literally means "Do you have any recommendations?"

This expression it is usually found in customer service situations, when a customer asks the clerk/ sales person/ waiter to suggest a certain product or service. This expression is formal speech. If the informal/ singular form of the verb is used (*ai*), the meaning is the same, but if the customer and the clerk/ waiter are not friends, it sounds rude.

**For Example:**

1. *Aveți vreo recomandare de paste bune?*  
"Do you have any good pasta dish recommendations?"

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Conditionals as a Polite Request**

***Aș dori să mănânc ceva de prânz.***  
**"I would like to have some lunch."**

***Foarte bine. Doriți un aperitiv?***  
**"Great. Would you like a starter?"**

***Da, aș vrea o salată.***  
**"Yes, I'd like a salad."**



In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. form the conditional in Romanian
2. use conditional verbs in Romanian, and when to use them
3. conjugate the most frequent verbs

## 1. How to form the conditional in Romanian

The conditional mood in Romanian (also known as optative conditional) is a grammatical mood used to express a desirable action, a possible, virtual fact or a proposition valid under certain conditions. Optative conditional is formed using the auxiliary verb **a avea** which means "to have" and the infinitive form of the verb.

For example, the present, singular, 1<sup>st</sup> optative conditional mood for the verb **a mânca** "to eat" is:

**aș** (particular form of the verb *a avea* "to have") + **mânca** (infinitive form)

Tense	Number and person		
Past	<b>Singular</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>eu aș fi mâncat</i> "I would have eaten"	<i>tu ai fi mâncat</i> "you would have eaten"	<i>el/ ea ar fi mâncat</i> "(s)he would have eaten"
Past	<b>Plural</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>noi am fi mâncat</i> "we would have eaten"	<i>voi ați fi mâncat</i> "you would have eaten"	<i>ei/ ele ar fi mâncat</i> "they would have eaten"
Present	<b>Singular</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Present	<i>eu aș mânca</i> "I would eat"	<i>tu ai mânca</i> "you would eat"	<i>el/ ea ar mânca</i> "(s)he would eat"

Present	<b>Plural</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Present	<i>noi am mânca</i> "we would eat"	<i>voi ați mânca</i> "you would eat"	<i>ei/ ele ar mânca</i> "they would eat"

## Let's see some examples

1. *Aș veni și eu.*  
"I would like to go, too."
2. *Dacă aș fi început să economisesc bani mai devreme, aș fi putut pleca într-o vacanță exotică.*  
"If I had starting saving money earlier, I would be able to go on an exotic trip this year. "
3. *Dacă aș câștiga la loterie, aș călători în jurul lumii.*  
"If I won the lottery, I would travel around the world."

## 2. How to use conditional verbs in Romanian, and when to use them

When the optative conditional form expresses an achievable goal dependent on some condition, it is used in a phrase where the subordinate clause contains the condition.

When the optative conditional form describes a wish, a hope, or a possible virtual fact, it is usually used in independent or main clauses.

### Examples:

#### I. Conditioned action:

1. *Dacă m-ai invita, aș veni.*  
"If you invite me, I will come."

#### II. Wish or hope

1. *Aș dori un pahar cu apă, vă rog.*  
"I would like a glass of water, please."

#### III. Possible, virtual fact

1. *Cine ar fi crezut că vom merge pe Lună?*  
"Who would have thought we would go to the Moon?"

### 3. How to conjugate the most frequent verbs

The optative conditional mood is also used when making polite requests or letting the interlocutor know about your desires. The most frequently used verbs are **a vrea**, meaning "to want," **a dori**, meaning "to wish," and **a (îi) plăcea**, meaning "to like (someone)." The optative conditional mood of all these three verbs have the **same equivalent in English: "I would like."**

#### A vrea / a dori chart

Tense	Number and person		
<b>Past</b>	<b>Singular</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>eu aş fi vrut/ dorit</i> "I would have liked"	<i>tu ai fi vrut/ dorit</i> "you would have liked"	<i>e/ ea ar fi vrut/ dorit</i> "(s)he would have liked"
Past	<b>Plural</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>noi am fi vrut/ dorit</i> "we would have liked"	<i>voi aţi fi vrut/ dorit</i> "you would have liked"	<i>ei/ ele ar fi vrut/ dorit</i> "they would have liked"
<b>Present</b>	<b>Singular</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Present	<i>eu aş vrea/ dori</i> "I would like"	<i>tu ai vrea/ dori</i> "you would like"	<i>e/ ea ar vrea/ dori</i> "(s)he would like"
Present	<b>Plural</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>

Present	<i>noi am vrea/ dori</i> "we would like"	<i>voi ați vrea/ dori</i> "you would like"	<i>ei/ ele ar vrea/ dori</i> "they would like"
---------	---------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

## A îi plăcea chart

<b>Tense</b>	<b>Number and person</b>		
<b>Past</b>	<b>Singular</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>mi-ar fi plăcut</i> "I would have liked"	<i>ți-ar fi plăcut</i> "you would have liked"	<i>i-ar fi plăcut</i> "(s)he would have liked"
Past	<b>Plural</b>		
Past	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Past	<i>ne-ar fi plăcut</i> "we would have liked"	<i>v-ar fi plăcut</i> "you would have liked"	<i>le-ar fi plăcut</i> "they would have liked"
<b>Present</b>	<b>Singular</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Present	<i>mi-ar plăcea</i> "I would like"	<i>ți-ar plăcea</i> "you would like"	<i>i-ar plăcea</i> "(s)he would like"
Present	<b>Plural</b>		
Present	1 <sup>st</sup>	2 <sup>nd</sup>	3 <sup>rd</sup>
Present	<i>ne-ar plăcea</i> "we would like"	<i>v-ar plăcea</i> "you would like"	<i>le-ar plăcea</i> "they would like"

## Let's see some examples:

1. *Dacă ți-aș putea îndeplini o dorință, ce ți-ai dori?*  
"If I could grant you one wish what would you wish for."
2. *Aș vrea să găsesc o slujbă mai bună.*  
"I wish I could get a better job."

3. *Mi-ar fi plăcut să devin pictor.*  
"I would have liked to become a painter."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Aș dori să mănânc ceva de prânz.*  
"I would like to have some lunch."
2. *Foarte bine. Doriți un aperitiv?*  
"Great. Would you like a starter?"
3. *Da, aș vrea o salată.*  
"Yes, I'd like a salad."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Aș vrea să te întreb dacă ai timp de o cafea?*  
"I would like to ask if you have time for a coffee?"
2. *Ai putea să mă ajuți?*  
"Could you help me, please?"
3. *Ai putea să îmi aduci un pahar cu apă, te rog?*  
"Could you bring me a glass of water, please?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Romanian wine

---

Wine was introduced to Romania about 3000 years ago by the Greeks, and it has been an indispensable part of life for Romanians ever since. The preferred varieties of Romanian wines are: Grasa of Cotnari, Merlot, Cabernet Sauvignon, Busuioaca de Bohotin, Pinot Noir. Traditional wine producers continue to dominate the Romanian preferences; Cotnari, Murfatlar Romania, and Jidvei have the most bottled wines in Romania. Nowadays, Romania is one of the world's largest wine producers. Romania has drawn the attention of European business people and wine buyers, thanks to affordable prices for both vineyards and wines. Romania ranks 5th place in European wine production. The trend is to produce more and to produce especially quality wines. Romanian wines are quality wines that are often the subject of international transactions. Usually they sell in Germany, France, and the USA, but recently, efforts have been made to capture the Chinese market because China is a

great wine consumer.

In 2014, Romania participated in the 20th edition of the traditional Brussels World Contest, one of the world's most important wine and tasting competitions. The Romanian wine received 9 gold medals and 11 silver medals. The gold medals were won by: Feteasca Neagra Egregio 2013, Floare de Luna Privat Reserve Feteasca Neagra 2013, Floare de Luna Privat Reserve Feteasca Alba 2013, Grasa de Cotnari 1982, Grasa de Cotnari 2000, Mosia de la Tohani Special Reserve 2011, Origini Cabernet Sauvignon 2011, Sable Noble Alb 2013, Solo Quinta White 2013. My personal favorite Romanian wines are: Fetească Albă-peachy, aromatic, floral, not too sweet; Fetească Neagră-red wine, spice and distinctive floral aromatics; and Romanian Pinot Noir-red fruit flavours and sweet spices. Try them with cured meats or cheeses.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Noroc!*  
"Cheers!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #6

## Getting a Suit Tailored in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 6

## ROMANIAN

1. Vânzătoare: Ce fel de geacă doriți?
2. Masanobu: Vreau o geacă subțire, de fâș și cu multe buzunare.
3. Vânzătoare: Avem una din piele, subțire, cu multe buzunare.
4. Masanobu: Alt material nu aveți?
5. Vânzătoare: Avem și din fâș, dar nu au multe buzunare.
6. Masanobu: Aș dori să o probez pe aceasta acum, se poate?
7. Vânzătoare: Sigur, domnule.

## ENGLISH

1. Salesperson: What kind of jacket do you want?
2. Masanobu: I want a thin jacket, made of slicker, and with many pockets.
3. Salesperson: We have one made of leather; it's thin and has many pockets.
4. Masanobu: Do you have other materials?
5. Salesperson: We have some made out of slicker, but they don't have many pockets.
6. Masanobu: I would like to try this on now, can I?
7. Salesperson: Certainly, sir.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
subțire	thin	adjective
mult	many	adjective
buzunar	pocket	noun
material	material	noun
chiar	really	adverb
a putea	can	verb
geacă	jacket	noun
fâș	slicker	noun
alt	other	adjective

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Noul iPad este foarte subțire.</b> "The new iPad is very thin."</p>	<p><b>Foarte mult.</b> "Very much."</p>
<p><b>E în buzunar.</b> "It's in the pocket."</p>	<p><b>Profesorul a rugat-o să înmâneze noul material colegilor ei.</b> "Her professor asked her to hand out the new material to her classmates."</p>
<p><b>Chiar îmi place acest film!</b> "I really like this movie!"</p>	<p><b>Pot să comand ceva?</b> "Can I order something?"</p>
<p><b>Poți să mergi până la farmacie?</b> "Can you go to the pharmacy?"</p>	<p><b>Am luat geaca de la spălătorie.</b> "I picked the jacket from the laundry."</p>
<p><b>Fâșul este impermeabil.</b> "The slicker is waterproof."</p>	<p><b>Mi-a dat trei alte rochii.</b> "She gave me three other dresses."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **Se poate?** "May I?"

---

**Se poate** is the reflexive impersonal form of the verb *a putea*, meaning "can." The literal translation is the equivalent of the rarely used English expression "one can."

Interrogative form is used mostly when asking for permission. *Se poate?* is a formal variation.

Other ways to translate the expression are:

*Se poate vedea* - "you can see."

*Se poate adăuga* - "may be added."

*O căsnicie se poate distruge* - "a marriage could fall apart."

*Nu se poate* - "there's no way."

### **For example:**

1. *Se poate ocupa acest loc?*  
"May I take this seat?"

## **Chiar acum.** "Right now."

---

**Chiar** is an adverb used to emphasize the precise location or time of something, that means "right." **Acum** is an adverb of time that means "now." *Chiar acum* means "right now," both literally and figuratively.

It can be used anytime the speaker is talking about an action that is taking place as he speaks, or it's just about to start. It is used in both formal or informal situations.

### **For example:**

1. *Vânzătoarea vine chiar acum.*  
"The salesperson is coming right now."

## GRAMMAR

## The Focus of This Lesson is More Cases

***Ce fel de geacă doriți?***

**"What kind of jacket do you want?"**

***Avem una din piele, subțire, cu multe buzunare.***

**"We have one made out of leather, it's thin and has many pockets."**

***Aș dori să probez pe aceasta acum, se poate?***

**"I would like to try this on now, can I?"**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

- 1. use the accusative case**
- 2. use the direct object with "on"**
- 3. use the direct object without "on"**

---

### **1. How to use the accusative case**

---

The nouns in accusative case have the syntactic function of direct object, indirect object, adverbial of agency, prepositional noun attribute, predictive, adverbial of place, adverbial of time, adverbial of manner, adverbial of purpose, and they can be articulated or not.

#### **"Articulated Nouns in Accusative Case" chart**

---

	<i>puiul/ puii</i>	<i>fratele/ frații</i>	<i>codrul/ codrii</i>		<i>omul/ oamenii</i>	<i>câinele/ câinii</i>
<b>Masculi ne</b>	"the chicken/ the chicken"	"the brother/ the brothers "	"the forest/ the forests"	<i>fiul/ fiii</i>	"the man/ the men"	"the dog/ the dogs"
<b>singula r/ plural</b>				"the son/ the sons"		

---

<b>Neuter</b>	<i>prânzul/ prânzuri</i>	<i>creionul/ creioanele</i>	<i>scaunul/ scaunele</i>	<i>pixul/ pixurile</i>	<i>bățul/ bețele</i>	<i>paiul/ paiele</i>
<b>singular/ plural</b>	"the lunch/ the lunches"	"the pencil/ the pencils"	"the chair/ the chairs"	"the pen/ the pens"	"the stick/ the sticks"	"the straw/ the straws"
<b>Feminine</b>	<i>masa/ mesele</i>	<i>fața/ fețele</i>	<i>cartea/ cărțile</i>	<i>ziua/ zilele</i>	<i>oaia/ oile</i>	<i>eleva/ elevetele</i>
<b>singular/ plural</b>	"the table/ the tables"	"the face/ the faces"	"the book/ the books"	"the day/ the days"	"the sheep/ the sheep"	"the student/ the students"

### "Non-articulated Nouns in Accusative" chart

<b>Masculine</b>	<i>un/ niște</i>	<i>pui/ pui</i>	<i>frate/ frați</i>	<i>codru/ codri</i>	<i>fiu/ fii</i>	<i>om/ oameni</i>	<i>câine/ câini</i>
<b>singular/ plural</b>	"a/ some"	"a chicken/ some chickens"	"a brother/ some brothers"	"a forest/ some forests"	"a son/ some sons"	"a man/ some men"	"a dog/ some dogs"
<b>Neuter</b>	<i>un/ niște</i>	<i>prânz/ prânzuri</i>	<i>creion/ creioane</i>	<i>scaun/ scaune</i>	<i>pix/ pixuri</i>	<i>băț/ bețe</i>	<i>pai/ paie</i>
<b>singular/ plural</b>	"a/ some"	"a lunch/ some lunches"	"a pencil/ some pencils"	"a chair/ some chairs"	"a pen/ some pens"	"a stick/ some sticks"	"a straw/ some straws"

<b>Femine</b>	<i>o/ niște</i>	<i>masă/ mese</i>	<i>față/ fețe</i>	<i>carte/ cărți</i>	<i>zi/ zile</i>	<i>oaie/ oi</i>	<i>elevă/ eleve</i>
<b>singular/ plural</b>	"a/ some"	"a table/ some tables"	"a face/ some faces"	"a book/ some books"	"a day/ some days"	"a sheep/ some sheep"	"a student/ some students"

## Let's see some sample sentences

1. *Puiul este prăjit.*  
"The chicken is fried."
2. *Aș vrea niște pixuri.*  
"I would like some pens."
3. *Cartea e pe masă.*  
"The book is on the table."

## 2. How to use the direct object with "on"

The use of the preposition **pe** for the direct object is a specific characteristic of Romanian.

The rules how to use *pe* ("on") are various and the direct translation of these uses in English can vary. Let's see some more examples below.

The preposition *pe* is used when the direct object is:

- a common noun showing persons assumed to be known both by the speaker and the listener:

1. *O aștept **pe Maria**.*  
"I'm waiting **for Maria**."

- a proper noun, the name of a person or of an animal:

1. *L-am văzut **pe George** aseară.*  
"I saw **George** last night."

## 3. How to use the direct object without "on"

The direct object can also be expressed without using the preposition "on." In this situation some forms of verbs that function as a noun are used. These forms are: infinitive, supine and gerund.

An important aspect worth mentioning is that when a verb can support a direct object, then it is a transitive verb (it expresses an action that falls upon some object/s).

<b>Verb form that function as a noun</b>	<b>Infinitive</b> "Infinitive"	<b>Supin</b> "Supine"	<b>Gerunziu</b> "Gerund"
	<i>a purta</i> "to wear"	<i>de purtat</i> "for wearing"	<i>purând</i> "wearing"
Examples of direct object cases expressed by verbs	<i>a proba (haine)</i> "to try out"	<i>de probat</i> "for trying out"	<i>probând</i> "trying out"
	<i>a putea</i> "to be able"	<i>de putut</i> "for being able"	<i>putând</i> "being able"

### Check some sample sentences:

1. *Aud **cântând**.*  
"I hear by **singing**."
2. ***A purta** haine este o chestiune de stil.*  
"**To wear** clothes is a matter of style."
3. *Aceste rochii sunt **de probat**.*  
"These dresses are **for trying out**."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Ce fel de geacă doriți?*  
"What kind of jacket do you want?"
2. *Vreau o geacă subțire, de fâș și cu multe buzunare.*  
"I want a thin jacket, made out of slicker and with many pockets."
3. *Aș dori să o probez pe aceasta acum, se poate?*  
"I would like to try this on now, can I?"

### Sample Sentences:

1. *El a văzut filmul recomandat.*  
"He watched the recommended movie."
2. *Mă uit la Andreea.*  
"I look at Andreea."
3. *Hoțul a fost văzut de polițist.*  
"The thief was seen by the cop."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Romanian traditional fashion:

---

The traditional Romanian costumes, are undoubtedly one of the most important cultural and historical elements in Romania. It is proof of national identity and of cultural differences in a certain geographical area in which a distinct civilization has formed, evolving according to its own laws adapted to a particular lifestyle. *Ia* is a women's shirt, characteristic of the traditional Romanian costumes, made of white cloth made from hemp, cotton, flax or floss silk. Usually the blouse is hand-stitched with elaborate embroidery. Depending on the region, the embroidery is combined with lace or uses various colors. Nowadays, this Romanian-style blouse has become an international style, included in many famous fashion collections.

*Opinci* are a traditional type of footwear in Romanian clothing from ancient times. They are made of a rectangular piece of leather gathered around the foot, and long leather strings tied tightly around the leg. These clothes are illustrated on the traditional Dacian costumes of ancient times. They are traditional footwear that the Romanians wore during winter, autumn or summer.

*Naframa* is a piece of cloth used as a headscarf. It was a very important part of women's traditional wear, because it represented marital status. Single women were the only ones allowed to have their heads uncovered and in braids. During traditional wedding ceremonies, the covering of the head was a meaningful moment.

### Useful expression:

1. *Tradiții și obiceiuri românești*  
"Romanian traditions and customs"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #7

# The Perils of Hiking in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 7

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Sunt foarte obosit. Destinația este încă departe?
2. Mihai: Da. Trebuie să urcăm aproximativ 3 (trei) ore de aici.
3. Masanobu: Oh! Este încă atât de departe. Nu cred că pot.
4. Mihai: Haide, eu sunt sigur că reușim!
5. Masanobu: Ai grijă! Este un urs!
6. Mihai: Unde?!
7. Masanobu: Acolo, chiar în spatele tău!

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: I'm really tired. Is the destination still far?
2. Mihai: Yeah. We need to climb about 3 hours more from here.
3. Masanobu: Oh! It's still so far. I don't think I can make it.
4. Mihai: Come on, I'm sure we can do it!
5. Masanobu: Watch out! There's a bear!
6. Mihai: Where?!
7. Masanobu: There, right behind you!

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
obosit	tired	adjective
încă	still	adverb
departe	far	adverb
destinație	destination	noun
urca	climb	verb
atât de	so	adverb
Haide!	Come!	sentence
în spatele	behind	preposition
grijă	care	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Sunt obosit, aș vrea să dorm.</b> "I am tired, I would like to sleep."</p>	<p><b>Nu este gata încă.</b> "It's not ready, yet."</p>
<p><b>Nu merge prea departe, te rog!</b> "Don't go too far, please!"</p>	<p><b>Trebuie să conduc câteva ore, destinația e departe.</b> "I have to drive for a couple of hours; the destination is far."</p>
<p><b>Am urcat scările ca să ajung la timp.</b> "I took the stairs to get there on time."</p>	<p><b>Este atât de târziu! Nu cred că mai ajungem la timp.</b> "It is so late! I don't think we will make it on time."</p>
<p><b>Haide, ne așteaptă mama!</b> "Come on, mother is waiting for us!"</p>	<p><b>În spatele magazinului e biroul.</b> "At the back of the store is the office."</p>
<p><b>Îmi fac griji pentru tine!</b> "I worry about you!"</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **Ai grijă!** "Be careful!"

---

This is the imperative form of the compound verb **a avea grijă** "to be careful," for the second person, singular form. The expression is made out of the verb **a avea** "to have" and the noun **grijă** "care." It literally means "to have care."

It can be used anytime someone perceives a danger (immediate or not) and wants to warn the other person about it. When speaking formally, the plural form of the compound verb is used - *aveți grijă!*

It can also be used as a note of threatening someone, when putting an accent on the first particle of the compound expression (*aî*).

### **For example:**

1. *Ai grijă să nu te pierzi!*  
"Be careful not to get lost!"

## **În spatele...** "Behind..."

---

This is a compound preposition forming an adverbial of *place* in the genitive case. It is made out of the preposition **în** "in" and the articulated noun **spate** (*spatele*) "(the) back." It literally means "in the back (of)..."

It is used to indicate the specific location where an item can be identified or the place of an action. When it is used unarticulated, *în spate*, it becomes an independent adverbial structure - ex. *Îl găsești în spate* "you can find him in the back."

### **For example:**

1. *În spatele casei există o piscină mică.*  
"Behind the house there is a small pool."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Modal Verbs to Express Necessity and Obligation**

***Trebuie să urcăm încă 3 (trei) ore.***

## "We need to climb for 3 (three) hours more."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use the most frequent verbs to express necessity and obligation
  2. use "must" to express necessity and obligation
  3. use "must", and when to use "must"
- 

### 1. How to use the most frequent verbs to express necessity and obligation

---

The modal verbs express the subjective attitude of the speaker toward the action of the verbs that precede them. The action can be perceived as possible, probable, necessary, or compulsory.

The most common ways to express necessity and obligation in Romanian are:

-By using **a trebui** ("must" / "to have (to)"), an imperfect verb that is normally followed by another verb in conjunctive, participle, infinitive or supine; or

-By using the verbs **a avea** "to have" and **a fi** "to be" followed by verbs in conjunctive or supine modes.

### Modes of verbs used in expressing necessity or obligation

#### Infinitive

1. It has no number or gender form.
2. It is preceded by the **a** preposition.
3. It has two tenses - present (*a vâna*, "to hunt") and past/perfect (*a fi vânat*, "to be hunted").
4. It has two forms - positive (*a vâna*, "to hunt") and negative (*a nu vâna*, "to not hunt")

#### Conjunctive

1. It has number and gender forms.
2. It is preceded by the **să** conjunction.
3. It has two tenses - present (*să vânez*, "to hunt") and perfect (*să fi vânat*, "to have hunted").

4. It has two forms - positive (*să vânez*, "to hunt") and negative (*să nu vânez*, "to not hunt").

## Participle

1. It has number and gender forms.
2. It has specific terminations according to the four conjugation classes in Romanian:

### I. infinitive verb in *-a* / participle ended in *-at*

1. *a vâna*  
"to hunt"
2. *vânat*  
"hunted"

### II. infinitive verb in *-ea* / participle ended in *-ut*

1. *a bea / băut*  
"to drink / drunk"

### III. infinitive verb in *-e* / participle ended in *-ut / -s / -t*

1. *a crede / crezut*  
"to believe / believed"

### IV. infinitive verb in *-i* / participle ended in *-it*; infinitive verb in *-î* / participle ended in *-ât*

1. *a citi / citit*  
"to read / read,"
2. *a urî / urât*  
"to hate / hated"

## Supine

1. It has no number or gender form.
2. It is build from **de** preposition + participle (*de vânat*, "of hunting")

3. Other prepositions can be also used: *la / pentru / de la* + participle (*pentru vânat*, "for hunting")

### Here are some sample sentences

1. **Trebuie să prinzi ursul acela.** ("must" + conjunctive, expressing obligation)  
"You must catch that bear."
2. **Am de așteptat 30 de minute.** ("to have" + supine)  
"I have to wait 30 minutes."
3. **Era să mă muște o vulpe.** ("to be" + conjunctive)  
"A fox was about to bite me."

## 2. How to use "must" to express necessity and obligation

You can find below the conjugation for the most important tenses of the verb *a trebui*:

### A *trebui* conjugation chart (part I)

Present		Past		Future	
singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
<i>eu trebuie (să)</i> "I must"	<i>noi trebuie (să)</i> "we must"	<i>eu a trebuit (să)</i> "I (had to)"	<i>noi a trebuit (să)</i> "we (had to)"	<i>eu va trebui (să)</i> "I will (have to)"	<i>noi va trebui (să)</i> "we will (have to)"
<i>tu trebuie (să)</i> "you must"	<i>voi trebuie (să)</i> "you must"	<i>tu a trebuit (să)</i> "you (had to)"	<i>Voi a trebuit (să)</i> "you (had to)"	<i>tu va trebui (să)</i> "you will (have to)"	<i>voi va trebui (să)</i> "you will (have to)"
<i>el / ea trebuie (să)</i> "he/she/it must"	<i>ei / ele trebuie (să)</i> "they must"	<i>el / ea a trebuit (să)</i> "he/she/it (had to)"	<i>ei / ele a trebuit (să)</i> "they (had to)"	<i>el/ ea va trebui (să)</i> "he/she/it will (have to)"	<i>ei/ ele va trebui (să)</i> "they will (have to)"

### A *trebui* conjugation chart (part II)

Conditional-optative (present)		Conditional-optative (perfect)	
singular	plural	singular	plural
<i>eu ar trebui (să)</i> "I should"	<i>noi ar trebui (să)</i> "we should"	<i>eu ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "I should have"	<i>noi ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "we should have"
<i>tu ar trebui (să)</i> "you should"	<i>Voi ar trebui (să)</i> "you should"	<i>tu ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "you should have"	<i>voi ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "you should have"
<i>el / ea ar trebui (să)</i> "he/she/it should"	<i>ei / ele ar trebui (să)</i> "they should"	<i>el / ea ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "he/she/it should have"	<i>ei / ele ar fi trebuit (să)</i> "they should have"

**A special attribute of a *trebui* verb is that its auxiliary conjunctions (*să, fie*) can be omitted (*Mâncarea trebuie (să fie) încălzită*. "The food must be heated.").**

Here are some sample sentences for the use of the verb:

1. *Ar trebui să mergem pe munte mai des.*  
"We should go to the mountains more often."
2. *Ar fi trebuit să fi mers atât de mult pe hartă.*  
"We should have walked that much on the map."
3. *Haide! Trebuie să ne grăbim!*  
"Let's go! We must hurry up!"

### 3. How to use "must," and when to use "must"

The verb *a trebui* can be used in many contexts expressing necessity and obligation.

The most common situations are:

- Indicating that a certain action is necessary and obligatory (***Trebuie*** *să mergem*. "We must go.")
- Indicating that a certain action is not necessary (***Nu trebuie*** *să aștepti*. "You do not need to wait.")

You can find below some of the nuances *a trebui* verb can take in Romanian when

expressing necessity and obligation\*:

Necessity	<i>Trebuie să mâncăm.</i> "We must eat."
Obligation	<i>Trebuie să fiți acolo la timp.</i> "You must be there on time."
An insistent invitation	<i>Trebuie să vină cu noi.</i> "They must come with us."
Warning	<i>Va trebui să fii atent la lupi.</i> "You will have to pay attention for wolves."
Expectancy	<i>Ar trebui să se întoarcă într-o oră.</i> "He/She/It should return in an hour."
A just, right or wrong thing (to do)	<i>Ar trebui să o ajuți pe sora ta.</i> "You should help your sister."

\* A particular expression is *Este / Nu este ce trebuie.*, meaning "It is (not) what it should be."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Da. Trebuie să urcăm aproximativ 3 (trei) ore de aici.*  
"Yeah. We need to climb for about 3 hours more from here."
2. *Oh! Este încă atât de departe. Nu cred că pot.*  
"Oh! It is still so far. I don't think I can make it."
3. *Haide, eu sunt sigur că reușim!*  
"Come on, I'm sure we can do it!"

### Sample Sentences:

1. *Trebuie să mă duc la lucru în fiecare zi.*  
"I have to get to work everyday."
2. *Ei trebuie să plece imediat.*  
"They must leave immediately."
3. *Trebuie să sun acasă mai târziu.*  
"I have to call home later."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Wild animals in Romania

---

Due to the vast geographical features of Romania, the wildlife here are considered one of the key elements of attraction. About 60% of all bears and 40% of all wolves in Europe are found in the Carpathian Mountains. There are over 6,000 brown bears in the Romanian Carpathians. A curious aspect here is the story of the brown bears in Brasov, a mountain city in the center of Romania. In search for food, the bears came down from the forests and searched for food on the streets of the city. New legislations, however, have considered the people's safety and moved the bears into a natural reservation. One hundred years ago, the Romanian regions hosted a very large wolf population. Now, these animals can be found only in the mountains and very rarely in dense forests. Yet, currently, wolf births have been growing at a rate of 0.5%, helping with the population revival. The fox is also a very common wild animal in Romania. The fur of foxes is a very coveted material among the luxury clothing producers, making these animals the target of hunters. Recently, Romania started a rabies vaccination campaign of foxes because they can easily transmit the virus to other animals, including humans.

The Romanian general animal protection legislation is still under intense debate and reorganization, and many international laws have been put into effect in the last few years with the active involvement of NGOs. Of great importance for the specific protection of wild animals in the country are the natural protected areas, such as the Danube Delta (included in the UNESCO's protective heritage). In Romania, there are currently more than 20 national or natural parks and one thousand protected areas, including almost 4,000 plant species and 300 animals.

### Useful expression:

1. *Șiret ca o vulpe.*  
"Sly as a fox."

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #8

# Talking About Your Daily Routine in Romanian

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# 8

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Ce faci de obicei sâmbăta?
2. Andreea: De obicei, dimineața fac cumpărături, iar după-amiaza fac sport.
3. Masanobu: Ce sport faci?
4. Andreea: Dacă este timp frumos, joc tenis, dar dacă plouă, stau acasă.
5. Masanobu: Foarte frumos, și mie îmi place tenisul.
6. Andreea: Haide să jucăm împreună weekend-ul viitor.
7. Masanobu: Sigur, poți să mă suni miercuri? Stabilim la ce oră să mergem.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: What do you usually do on Saturdays?
2. Andreea: I usually shop in the morning and in the afternoon I play sports.
3. Masanobu: What sports do you play?
4. Andreea: If the weather's nice, I like playing tennis, but if it rains, I stay at home.
5. Masanobu: Very nice, I like tennis too.
6. Andreea: Let's play together next weekend.

CONT'D OVER

7. Masanobu: Sure, can you call me on Wednesday? We'll decide what time to go.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
Sâmbătă	Saturday	noun
dimineață	morning	adverb
cumpărături	shopping	noun
sport	sport	noun
tenis	tennis	noun
a juca	to play	verb
împreună	together	adverb
Miercuri	Wednesday	noun
frumos	beautiful	adjective

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>E deja sâmbătă!</b> "It's already Saturday!"</p>	<p><b>Dimineața de obicei fac sport.</b> "In the morning I usually do sports."</p>
<p><b>Vrei să mergem împreună la cumpărături?</b> "Do you want to go shopping together?"</p>	<p><b>Îmi place sportul.</b> I like sports.</p>
<p><b>Toți colegii mei joacă tenis cu excepția mea.</b> "All my coworkers play tennis except me."</p>	<p><b>Băiețelul joacă jocuri video în fiecare seara după ce studiază din greu.</b> "The little boy plays video games every evening after studying hard."</p>

<b>Ei călătoresc împreună.</b> They travel together.	<b>Miercuri ieșim în oraș.</b> "Wednesday we go out."
<b>Ea este foarte frumoasă.</b> She is very beautiful.	<b>Foarte frumos.</b> Very beautiful.

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***Foarte frumos!*** **"Very nice!"**

This is an exclamatory expression built from the morpheme **foarte** "very" and the adjective **frumos** "beautiful" in singular masculine form. Essentially, it is the absolute superlative form of the *frumos* "beautiful" adjective, meaning "very beautiful."

This is indicating a great appreciation on behalf of the speaker toward something he or she observed. In case of a lower degree of appreciation, use just *frumos* without adding the *foarte* morpheme (as this is the element needed to express the absolute superlative). Therefore, using only *Fumos!* you will say "Nice!"

It can be used as either an integrator within a sentence, or as an independent sentence ending with an exclamation mark.

#### **For example:**

1. *Joci tenis? Foarte frumos!*  
"You play tennis? Very nice!"

### ***a juca împreună*** **"to play together"**

This is an expression formed from the verb **a juca** "to play" and the modal adverb **împreună** "together." It literally means "to play together."

You can use this structure to express the action of sharing a playing experience (two or more people). An alternative version of the expression implies using the reflexive form of the verb *a juca-a se juca*. (*Vrei să ne jucăm Monopoly?* "Do you

want to play Monopoly?") This offers a more informal tone to the speech or text.

### For example:

1. *Vrei să jucăm baschet împreună mâine seară?*  
"Do you want to play basketball together tomorrow night?"

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Modal Verbs - Expressing Ability

**Poți să mă suni mâine?**  
"Can you call me tomorrow?"

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. recognize "to be able to"
2. use "to be able to"

---

#### 1. How to recognize "to be able to"

---

**A putea "can / to be able to" is the most common modal verb used in Romanian to express ability.**

Listed below are the conjugation of tenses that Romanians are using most often to express ability with the *a putea* verb:

#### A putea conjugation chart

---

Present		Past		Future		Conditional-optative (present)	
singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
<i>eu pot (să)</i>	<i>noi putem (să)</i>	<i>eu am putut (să)</i>	<i>noi am putut (să)</i>	<i>eu voi putea (să)</i>	<i>noi vom putea (să)</i>	<i>eu aș putea (să)</i>	<i>noi am putea (să)</i>
"I can / am able (to)"	"we can / are able (to)"	"I could / was able (to)"	"we could / were able (to)"	"I will be able (to)"	"we will be able (to)"	"I could"	"we could"

---

<i>tu poți</i> (să) "you can / are able (to)"	<i>voi</i> <i>puteți</i> (să) "you can / are able (to)"	<i>tu ai</i> <i>putut</i> (să) "you could / were able (to)"	<i>voi ați</i> <i>putut</i> (să) "you could were able (to)"	<i>tu vei</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "you will be able (to)"	<i>voi veți</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "you will be able (to)"	<i>tu ai</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "you could"	<i>voi ați</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "you could"
<i>el / ea</i> <i>poate</i> (să) "he/ she/it can / is able (to)"	<i>ei / ele</i> <i>pot</i> (să) "they can / are able (to)"	<i>el / ea a</i> <i>putut</i> (să) "he/ she/it could / was able (to)"	<i>ei / ele</i> <i>au</i> <i>putut</i> (să) "they were able (to)"	<i>el / ea</i> <i>va</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "he/ she/it will be able (to)"	<i>ei / ele</i> <i>vor</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "they will be able (to)"	<i>el / ea</i> <i>ar</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "he/ she/it could"	<i>ei / ele</i> <i>ar</i> <i>putea</i> (să) "they could"

## 2. How to use "to be able to"

A *putea* can take many nuances in use, such as:

### The uses of a *putea* verb chart

Gives information about capacity	<i>Dan poate înțelege româna, însă <b>nu poate</b> vorbi foarte bine.</i> "Dan can understand Romanian, but he cannot speak very well."
Formulating a solicitation	<b>Ați putea</b> să vorbiți mai încet, vă rog? "Can you please lower your voice?"
Offering help	<b>Aș putea</b> să vă ajut? "Can I help you?"
Request permission or give permission	<b>Pot</b> veni și eu? or <b>Pot</b> să vin și eu? "Can I come too?" <i>Sigur, poți veni.</i> "Sure, you can come."
Considering a fact to be possible or not	<i>Acest lucru <b>(nu) se poate</b> întâmpla.</i> "This thing can (not) happen."

---

Considering a fact as hypothetical possible

**Ai putea** să te rătăcești singur pe munți.  
"You could get lost alone in the mountains."

---

Suggesting an action to someone

**Puteti** întreba antrenorul.  
"You can ask the coach."

---

**With formal or polite situations**, the interrogative form of a verb is utilized in the plural second person, as in the case above suggesting a polite request. For example in:

1. **Puteti** să mă sunați mâine?  
"Can you call me tomorrow?"

Moreover, the conditional-optative tense in interrogative can be used to provide more politeness:

1. **Ați putea** să mă sunați mâine?  
"Could you call me tomorrow?"

**Here are some more sample sentences of using a putea**

1. **Eu pot** juca tenis foarte bine.  
"I can play tennis very well."
2. **Am putea** merge mâine la cumpărături.  
"We could go shopping tomorrow."
3. **Mă poți** ajuta?  
"Can you help me?"

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. **Haide să jucăm împreună weekend-ul viitor.**  
"Let's play together next weekend."
2. Sigur, poți să mă suni miercuri? Stabilim la ce oră să mergem.  
"Sure, can you call me on Wednesday? We'll decide what time to go."

**Sample Sentences:**

---

1. *Poți să mă ajuți?*  
"Can you help me?"
2. *Puteți pleca mai devreme astăzi.*  
"You can leave earlier today."
3. *Am putea merge împreună acasă.*  
"We could go home together."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Giving gifts in Romania

---

The etiquette and customs of Romanians are diverse depending on each of the country's regions, but at their core, Romanians are hospitable people who invite you into their homes, to their tables to eat and drink, and to talk about anything. Offering and receiving gifts is a custom present in many moments and contexts in their lives. When invited to dinner, gifts of alcohol and flowers are always welcomed. Flowers are offered in odd numbers due to the common belief that even flowers are usually offered at funerals. Additionally, it is considered polite to open the gifts when they are received. Gifts are also offered on birthdays, name days, Christmas, New Year's, Easter, on Woman's Day (8th of March), on Couples Day (14th of February on Saint Valentine's Day-even if it is not an Orthodox holiday-and 24th of February on Dragobete, which is the Romanian holiday to cherish love), and on a wedding day. The 1st of March is another Romanian holiday when boys and men offer a Martisor to the ladies as a token to wear as a celebration of Spring. When thinking of the suitable gifts to offer a Romanian, you should know that they are not pretentious and a symbolic, unexpected and creative gift will be highly appreciated. Romanians are also very excited when receiving foreign souvenirs, especially from places they have not visited yet. Furthermore, practical gifts are very welcomed, even more so if they have interesting features or entertainment purposes. Budget wise, it is appropriate to spend around 15 euros when shopping for a gift. More expensive ones are often offered by close friends or on very special occasions.

### Useful expression:

1. *Mulțumesc!*  
"Thank you!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #9

## Talking About Your Plans in Romanian

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 9

## ROMANIAN

1. Mihai: Masanobu, aș vrea să merg la studii în Japonia.
2. Masanobu: Da? Mă bucur să aud asta!
3. Mihai: Bineînțeles, este o țară atât de interesantă! Trebuie să strâng bani.
4. Masanobu: Cred că pentru tine e mai ușor să obții o bursă.
5. Mihai: Ești sigur? Nu este greu?
6. Masanobu: Este, dar sunt sigur că tu poți, ar trebui să dai examenul pentru bursă.
7. Mihai: Mulțumesc mult de sfat, încerc!

## ENGLISH

1. Mihai: Masanobu, I'd like to go study in Japan.
2. Masanobu: Really? I'm glad to hear that!
3. Mihai: Of course, it's such an interesting country. I need to raise money.
4. Masanobu: I think it's easier for you to obtain a scholarship.
5. Mihai: Are you sure? Isn't it difficult?
6. Masanobu: It is, but I'm sure you can do it. You should take the scholarship exam.

CONT'D OVER

7. Mihai:

Thank you for the advice, I'll give it a try.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a auzi	hear	verb
Bineînțeles.	Of course.	adverb
pentru	for	preposition
ușor	easy	adverb
bani	money	noun
a se bucura	to be glad	verb
studiu	study	noun
bursă	scholarship	noun
sfat	advice	noun
strânge	raise	verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<b>Am auzit că pleci mâine.</b> "I heard you are leaving tomorrow."	<b>Bineînțeles că te așteptăm.</b> "Of course we will wait for you."
<b>Pentru puțin.</b> "For nothing."	<b>E ușor să vorbești româna?</b> "Is it easy to speak Romanian?"
<b>Tu ai cheltuit toți banii tăi pentru această excursie.</b> "You spent all your money for this trip."	<b>Părinții mei se bucură pentru reușita mea profesională.</b> "My parents are glad for my professional success."
<b>Ne bucurăm să vă revedem.</b> We're happy to see you again.	<b>Tu ai făcut studii în străinătate?</b> "Did you study abroad?"

<b>Am aplicat pentru o bursă în Anglia.</b> "I applied for a scholarship in England."	<b>Îmi poți da un sfat, te rog?</b> "Can you give me some advice, please?"
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

**Au strâns mulți bani cu această campanie media.**

"They raised a lot of money with this media campaign."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***la studii*** **"to study"**

It is an expression made out of the preposition **la** "to" and the neuter noun **studii** "studies" in its plural form. It literally means "to studies" and responds to the question "where?" therefore using the accusative case of the noun.

It refers to someone that is going to study somewhere, usually in another place than the one he or she is living.

It is also common to use the conjunctive form *să studieze* "to study" of the verb *a studia* "to study". But in this case, the destination should be mentioned in order to keep the same meaning of the expression (ex. *A plecat să studieze în Statele Unite ale Americii.* "She went to study in the USA.")

### **For example:**

1. *Aș merge la studii în străinătate.*  
"I wish to go study abroad."

### ***Mă bucur să...*** **"I'm glad to..."**

It is an expression made out of the reflexive form of the verb **a se bucura** "to be glad" followed by the **să** "to" conjunction. Therefore, **mă** is the reflexive pronoun for the first person singular, used to create the reflexive form of the verb.

This expression literally means "I am glad to" and it is used to express the speaker's feelings of happiness toward a particular action. In the opposite case, in which the speaker wants to express his or her feelings of sorrow about a particular action, the expression used is *îmi pare rău să* "I am sorry to" (ex. *Îmi pare rău să aud că a trebuit să treci prin toate astea.* "I am sorry to hear that you had to go through all of this.")

### For example:

1. *Mă bucur să aud că te-ai căsătorit.*  
"I am glad to hear that you got married."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Expressions of Comparison

***Cred că pentru tine e mai ușor să obții o bursă.***  
**"I think it's easier for you to obtain a scholarship."**

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. form expressions of comparison
  2. use "better"
  3. use "easier"
- 

### 1. How to form expressions of comparison

---

In Romanian, comparison as a modal aspect of the syntax can be expressed through several specific forms of adjectives or adverbs which point out various comparisons.

Some adverbs of modality, place, and time can be compared. Their degrees of comparison (expressing inferiority, superiority, or equality) form with the help of adverbial structures *mai* "more," *mai puțin* "less," *foarte* "very," *grozav de* "terribly," *extrem de* "extremely," *extraordinar de* "extraordinarily," *teribil de* "terribly."

Besides the comparative degrees, there are also the relative superlative of superiority (*cel mai... dintre ...* "the most.... of..." or *cel mai...de la/(de) pe...* "the most... from/of") or of inferiority (*cel mai puțin...dintre* "the least.. of/from") that are expressing comparisons.

A special case is that of the comparative sentence using:

## **pe cât "as..." + prep. + pe atât "as..." + prep.**

Usually, after the adverb with a degree of comparison follows a preposition, such as *decât, ca, precum, față de*.

Although, special attention should be paid to a set of adverbs and adjectives that do not support a degree of comparison: *superior* "superior," *inferior* "inferior," *exterior* "exterior," *interior* "interior," *minim* "minimal," *maxim* "maximal," *optim* "optimum," *splendid* "gorgeous," *grozav* "great," *extraordinar* "extraordinary," *excelent* "excellent," *formidabil* "formidable," *perfect* "perfect," *enorm* "huge," *parțial* "partial," *total* "totally," *complet* "completely," *inițial* "initial," *final* "final," *prim* "first," *ultim* "last," *viu* "alive," *mort* "dead."

## **Types of expressing comparison**

### **Conformity**

1. Compound adverbs followed by accusative case: *asemănător cu* "similar to" / *similar cu* "similar to" / *adevat cu* "suitably with" / *potrivit cu* "according to" / *conform cu* "in compliance with."
2. Adverbs followed by dative case: *asemănător* "similar (to)" / *similar* "similar (to)" / *adevat* "suitably (with)" / *potrivit* "according (to)" / *conform* "in compliance (with)."
3. Infinitive verbs followed by dative case: *a se asemana cu* "to resemble with" / *a se potrivi cu* "to fit with."
4. Using the participle of reflexive form of the verb *a (se) apropia*, requesting a noun in accusative case: *apropiat de* "close to" / *a se apropia de* "to be close to."
5. Other comparative expressions as a form of the discourse: *prin comparație* "by comparison" / *comparând acestea...* "comparing the..." / *un caz similar este...* "a similar case is..." / *la fel se întâmplă cu...* "the similar is with..." / *tot așa este în cazul...* "the same is in the case of..." / *după cum am arătat, ...* "as noted / showed,..."

### **Identity**

1. Compound adverbs followed by accusative case: *identic cu* "identical to" / *la fel cu* "as with."
2. Adverbs followed by dative case: *identic* "identical (to)" / *echivalent* "equivalent (to)."

3. Compound adverbs + adverbs or adjectives + *ca și* + accusative case: *la fel de + adv./adj. + ca și* "as ... as" / *tot atât de + adv./adj. + ca și* "as ... as" / *tot așa de + adv./adj. + ca și* "just as ... as."
4. Expressions of correlations: *așa cum...* "as" ; *atât cât...* "as much as" ; *astfel / în așa fel... încât / ca...* "as to" ; *așa de... de...* "so... that" ; *atât (de)... încât / că / (pentru) ca să...* "so much... that."

## Difference or opposition

1. Adverbs of modality: *în alt fel* "in another way" / *altfel* "otherwise" / *în alt mod* "in another way" / *(în mod) diferit* "in a different way."
2. Compound adverbs + accusative case: *diferit de* "different from" / *altfel decât* "otherwise than" / *spre deosebire de* "unlike" / *în loc de* "instead of."
3. Verb + *mai (puțin)* "less" + adj./adv. + *decât; ca; în comparație cu* "than; as; compared to" + accusative case
4. *cel mai / cea mai / cei mai / cele mai* "the most" + adj. + *dintre / din* "from / of" + accusative case
5. *cel mai* "the most" + adv. + *dintre / din* "from / of" + accusative case
6. *altfel de cum* "otherwise than" / *diferit de cum* "different than" / *altfel decât* "otherwise than" + verb
7. Verb 1 + *dar* "but" / *însă* "however" / *în schimb* "instead" / *în timp ce* "while" / *pe când* "whilst" / *în loc să* "instead of" + verb 2

## Here are some sample sentences

1. *Aceste rochii sunt **asemănătoare cu** cele ale lui Iulia.*  
"These dresses are similar to the ones of Iulia."
2. *La mine acasă este **la fel de cald ca** la tine.*  
"My place is as warm as yours."
3. *S-a întâmplat **altfel de cum** mi-am imaginat.*  
"It happened differently than I imagined."

## 2. How to use "better"

*Bine* is the Romanian translation for the modal adverb "well." As an adverb, *bine*

has different degrees of comparison-of superiority (*mai bine* "better (than)"), of equality (*la fel de bine* "just as good (as)"), and of inferiority (*mai puțin bine* "less well (than)").

*Mai bine* "better," the comparative degree of *bine*, is formed from the prefix *mai* "more" and the positive form of the adverb *bine* "well." It is used to compare a certain activity with another in terms of its quality.

Several expressions or sayings are formed with the *mai bine* adverb. Here are some of the most important:

1. *E mai bine să...* "It is better to" (making a recommendation)
2. *Mai bine să ... decât să...* "It is better to... than to..." (comparing two situations)
3. Verb + *cât mai bine!* "the best" (imperative sentence, emphasizing the effort needed)
4. *Mai bine mai târziu decât niciodată.* (proverb) "Better late than never."
5. *A fi mai bine* "be better" (to be desirable or preferable)
6. *Mai bine zis / spus* "better said" (introducing a specification, a special mentioning)

### Here are some sample sentences using *mai bine*:

1. ***Mai bine*** să plecăm mai devreme decât să pierdem trenul.  
"It is better to leave earlier than to miss the train."
2. *Ar fi **mai bine** să să suni înainte.*  
"It would be better to call me ahead."
3. *El vorbește **mai bine** decât mine românește.*  
"He speaks Romanian better than me."

### 3. How to use "easier"

---

*Ușor* is the Romanian translation for the modal adverb or the adjective "easy."

As an adverb, *easy* has different degrees of comparison-of superiority (*mai ușor* "easier (than)"), of equality (*la fel de ușor* "just as easy (as)"), and of inferiority (*mai puțin ușor* "less easy (than)").

*Mai ușor* "easier," the comparative degree of *ușor*, is formed from the prefix *mai*

"more" and the positive form of the adverb *ușor* "easy." It is used to compare a certain activity with another in terms of its difficulty.

As an adjective, the declension by gender and number of *ușor* is as follows:

Feminine		Masculine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
mai ușoară	mai ușoare	mai ușor	mai ușori

**Here are some sample sentences using the adverb / adjective *mai ușor*:**

1. *Îmi este **mai ușor** să vorbesc cu tine decât cu alți oameni.*  
"It is easier for me to talk to you than with other people."
2. *Mi se pare că vorbești **mai ușor** japoneza în ultimul timp.*  
"It seems to me that you speak Japanese easier lately."
3. *Vrea să încerce niște subiecte **mai ușoare**.*  
"He wants to try easier topics."

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. *Bineînțeles, este o țară atât de interesantă! Trebuie să strâng bani.*  
"Of course, it's such an interesting country. I need to raise money."
2. *Cred că pentru tine e mai ușor să obții o bursă.*  
"I think it's easier for you to obtain a scholarship."
3. *Ești sigur? Nu este greu?*  
"Are you sure? Isn't it difficult?"

**Sample Sentences:**

1. *Îmi place mai mult acest caiet.*  
"I like this notebook more."
2. *Am mai multă experiență decât tine.*  
"I have more experience than you."
3. *Este mai bine să mergi pe aici.*  
"It is better to go straight."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Higher education

---

Romanians considered education as a national priority which led to the education system being under the protection of the Constitution and organic laws (the Education Law). However, the general public opinion on education perceives it as rather unsatisfactory. Romania's higher education is provided by universities, academies of study, institutes, and higher education schools. Overall, there are more than one hundred higher education institutions, with an almost equal number of public and private universities (although the students from private institutions represent approximately 20% of the whole student population). In terms of admission, many programs of study focus on the student's performance at the baccalaureate, while others organize admission exams, mostly based on a specific knowledge assessment test. Due to the particularity of each exam, future students are expected to decide their career path with at least a year beforehand and study for their exams in order to be admitted. In the 2017 Global University Ranking, there were only four Romanian Universities present on the list: Babes-Bolyai University in Cluj-Napoca, University of Bucharest, Polytechnic University of Bucharest and the Alexandru Ioan Cuza University in Iasi.

Of great importance for the Romanian higher education system is the rising number of young people going to study abroad. It is estimated that currently a tenth of the national student population studies abroad (over 50,000 students). This is especially due to the great attraction of ivy league universities from the US and EU, to the scholarship opportunities (such as Erasmus European program), and low confidence in the quality of many Romanian study programs. However, an important aspect in the last decade is also the incoming student population from all over the world that appreciates the educational opportunities in Romania (especially for study programs in Computer Science, Medicine, and Engineering).

### Useful expression:

1. *Baftă la examen!*  
"Good luck on your exam!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #10

# A Trip to the Romanian Countryside

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# **10**

## ROMANIAN

1. Andreea: Cum a fost la Braşov?
2. Masanobu: A fost frumos. Am vizitat multe muzee interesante.
3. Andreea: Ai urcat și pe munte?
4. Masanobu: Da, m-am plimbat prin jurul oraşului și am urcat pe Muntele Tâmpa.
5. Andreea: Ai făcut poze?
6. Masanobu: Sigur, am făcut multe poze.
7. Andreea: Arată-mi și mie!
8. Masanobu: Sigur, îți arăt.

## ENGLISH

1. Andreea: How was Braşov?
2. Masanobu: It was nice. I visited many interesting museums.
3. Andreea: Did you also climb the mountains?
4. Masanobu: Yes, I took a walk around the town and climbed on Mount Tâmpa.
5. Andreea: Did you take pictures?
6. Masanobu: Sure, I took a lot.

CONT'D OVER

7. Andreea: Show me!
8. Masanobu: Sure, I'll show you.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a vizita	go sightseeing	verb
muzeu	museum	noun
poză	picture	noun
a arăta	show	verb
interesant	interesting	adjective
se plimba	walk	verb
în jurul	around	preposition
mie	me	pronoun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>El a vizitat multe țări.</b> "He visited many countries."</p>	<p><b>Aici este un muzeu.</b> There is a museum here.</p>
<p><b>Cât costă o poză cu hotelul Ritz?</b> "How much is a picture with the Ritz Hotel?"</p>	<p><b>Tata ne arată cum se dansează.</b> "Dad shows us how to dance."</p>
<p><b>Cartea aceea este interesantă.</b> "That book is interesting."</p>	<p><b>Ne-am plimbat multe ore pe străzi.</b> "We walked many hours in the streets."</p>

<p><b>În jurul Bucureștiului sunt multe atracții turistice.</b></p> <p>"There are many tourist attractions around Bucharest."</p>	<p><b>Mi-au zis mie cum să cânt.</b></p> <p>"They told me how to sing."</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **Prin jurul orașului** "Around the town"

It is an expression made out of the compound preposition **prin jurul** "around" and the articulated form of the neuter noun **oraș** "town" in its singular form. The compound preposition is formed by the preposition *prin* "through" and the articulated form of the neuter noun *jur* "surrounding, place, neighborhood" in its singular form. The whole expression represents an adverbial of place responding to the question "where?"

The expression is used when you want to refer to a relative (not very well defined) surface located around a specific city. *În jurul orașului*, also translated as "around the town" can be used instead. In this case, a more specific localization of the surface is provided, as the preposition *prin* "through" indicates a more relative or not as well-defined zone as the preposition *în* "in."

#### **For example:**

1. *M-am întâlnit cu el prin jurul orașului.*  
"I met him around the town."

### **Și mie** "Me (emphasized)"

It is an expression formed from the modal adverb **și** "too" and the pronoun **mie** "me" to literally make "too me," a personal pronoun first person phrase used as an indirect complement in the dative case. It literally means "to me too."

The expression is used to emphasize a solicitation from the speaker on a specific action on the behalf of someone else (eg. *Dă-mi și mie sarea, te rog.* "Give me the salt, please!") It can also be used for other persons - *și ție* "to you too," *și ei/lei* "to her/him too," *și nouă* "to us too," *și vouă* "to you too," *și lor* "to them too." In this

case, the speaker is asking his interlocutor to perform the action for these other persons (eg. *Dă-le și lor sarea, te rog!* "Give them the salt, please!")

### For example:

1. *Zi-mi și mie cum să fac asta.*  
"Tell me how to do this."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Verbs to Discuss Past Events

***A fost frumos. Am vizitat multe muzee interesante.***  
**"It was nice. I visited many interesting museums."**

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. form the simple past
2. use the simple past

---

### 1. How to form the simple past

In Romanian, the simple past (*perfectul compus*) is the most utilized past tense.

*Perfectul compus* is the only compound past tense. In Romanian, the other past tenses (*perfectul simplu* "present perfect," *imperfectul* "past continuous," *mai mult ca perfectul* "past perfect") form without the help of other verbs.

In order to form the simple past in Romanian, you must use the following formula:

---

*Perfectul compus* "simple past" = aux. *a avea* "to have" (or abbreviated forms)  
+ participle\*

---

\* The participle in this case does not adjust to number or gender.

### Simple past conjugation chart for common verbs

---

**INFINITIV**  
**"INFINITIVE"**

**PREZENT**  
**"PRESENT SIMPLE"**

**PERFECT COMPUS**  
**"SIMPLE PAST"**

---

<p><i>a fi</i> "to be"</p>	<p><i>eu sunt, tu ești, el/ea este, noi suntem, voi sunteți, ei sunt</i> "I am, you are, he/she/it is, we are, you are, they are"</p>	<p><i>eu am fost, tu ai fost, el/ea a fost, noi am fost, voi ați fost, ei au fost</i> "I was, you were, he/she/it were, we were, you were, they were"</p>
<p><i>a avea</i> "to have"</p>	<p><i>eu am, tu ai, el/ea are, noi avem, voi aveți, ei au</i> "I have, you have, he/she/it has, we have, you have, they have"</p>	<p><i>eu am avut, tu ai avut, el/ea a avut, noi am avut, voi ați avut, ei au avut</i> "I had, you had, he/she/it had, we had, you had, they had"</p>
<p><i>a vedea</i> "to see"</p>	<p><i>eu văd, tu vezi, el/ea vede, noi vedem, voi vedeți, ei văd</i> "I see, you see, he/she/it sees, we see, you see, they see"</p>	<p><i>eu am văzut, tu ai văzut, el/ea a văzut, noi am văzut, voi ați văzut, ei au văzut</i> "I saw, you saw, he/she/it saw, we saw, you saw, they saw"</p>
<p><i>a ști</i> "to know"</p>	<p><i>eu știu, tu știi, el/ea știe, noi știm, voi știți, ei știu</i> "I know, you know, he/she/it knows, we know, you know, they know"</p>	<p><i>eu am știut, tu ai știut, el/ea a știut, noi am știut, voi ați știut, ei au știut</i> "I knew, you knew, he/she/it knew, we knew, you knew, they knew"</p>
<p><i>a vizita</i> "to visit"</p>	<p><i>eu vizitez, tu vizitezi, el/ea vizitează, noi vizităm, voi vizitați, ei vizitează</i> "I visit, you visit, he/she/it visits, we visit, you visit, they visit"</p>	<p><i>eu am vizitat, tu ai vizitat, el/ea a vizitat, noi am vizitat, voi ați vizitat, ei au vizitat</i> "I visited, you visited, he/she/it visited, we visited, you visited, they visited"</p>
<p><i>a urca</i> "to climb"</p>	<p><i>eu urc, tu urci, el/ea urcă, noi urcăm, voi urcați, ei urcă</i> "I climb, you climb, he/she/it climbs, we climb, you climb, they climb"</p>	<p><i>eu am urcat, tu ai urcat, el/ea a urcat, noi am urcat, voi ați urcat, ei au urcat</i> "I climbed, you climbed, he/she/it climbed, we climbed, you climbed, they climbed"</p>

a (se) plimba "to walk"	<p>eu (mă) plimb, tu (te) plimbi, el/ea (se) plimbă, noi (ne) plimbăm, voi (vă) plimbați, ei (se) plimbă</p> <p>"I walk, you walk, he/she/it walks, we walk, you walk, they walk"</p>	<p>eu (m-)am plimbat, tu (te-)ai plimbat, el/ea (s-)a plimbat, noi (ne-)am plimbat, voi (v-)ați plimbat, ei (s-)au plimbat</p> <p>"I walked, you walked, he/she/it walked, we walked, you walked, they walked"</p>
a face "to do / to make"	<p>eu fac, tu faci, el/ea face, noi facem, voi faceți, ei fac</p> <p>"I do/make, you do/make, he/she/it does/makes, we do/make, you do/make, they do/make"</p>	<p>eu am făcut, tu ai făcut, el/ea a făcut, noi am făcut, voi ați făcut, ei au făcut</p> <p>"I did/made, you did/made, he/she/it did/made, we did/made, you did/made, they did/made"</p>
a arăta "to show"	<p>eu arăt, tu arăți, el/ea arată, noi arătăm, voi arătați, ei arată</p> <p>"I show, you show, he/she/it shows, we show, you show, they show"</p>	<p>eu am arătat, tu ai arătat, el/ea a arătat, noi am arătat, voi ați arătat, ei au arătat</p> <p>"I showed, you showed, he/she/it showed, we showed, you showed, they showed"</p>

## Here are some sample sentences using past simple

1. Azi **am urcat** mai devreme pe munte.  
"Today, we started climbing the mountain earlier in the day."
2. Mi-**am văzut** ochelarii pe masă.  
"I saw my glasses on the table."
3. Ei **au știut** că nu va merge strategia asta.  
"They knew this strategy would not work."

## 2. How to use simple past

The action of this tense is anterior to the moment of speaking and is ended before that.

Moreover, it can also express anteriority also in relation to other temporal landmarks, as for example, one situated in the future (e.g. *Săptămâna viitoare vom fi fericiți că **am terminat** cu acest examen.* "Next week we will be happy that we finished this exam.")

It is frequently accompanied by adverbial structures such as: *acum...* "...ago" / *înainte cu..* "...before" / *în urmă cu...* "...ago" + time interval (e.g. *Mihai **a mâncat** acum o oră.* "Mihai ate an hour ago.").

For the negative and reflexive forms, abbreviations may be used to form the structure:

## Using the simple past in Romanian

<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Simple present Affirmative</b>	<b>Simple past Affirmative</b>	<b>Simple past Negative</b>	<b>Simple past Reflexive</b>	<b>Simple past interrogative</b>
<i>a gândi</i> "to think"	<i>eu gândesc</i> "I think"	<i>eu am gândit</i> "I thought"	<i>eu nu am / n-am gândit</i> "I did not think"	<i>eu m-am gândit</i> "I thought"	<i>(M-)am gândit?</i> "Did I think?"
<i>a gândi</i> "to think"	<i>tu gândești</i> "you think"	<i>tu ai gândit</i> "you thought"	<i>tu nu ai / n-ai gândit</i> "You did not think"	<i>tu te-ai gândit</i> "you thought"	<i>(Te)-ai gândit?</i> "Did you think?"
<i>a gândi</i> "to think"	<i>el/ea gândește</i> "he/she/it thinks"	<i>el/ea a gândit</i> "he/she/it thought"	<i>el/ea nu a / n-a gândit</i> "he/she/it did not think"	<i>el/ea s-a gândit</i> "he/she/it thought"	<i>(S-)a gândit?</i> "Did he/she/it think?"
<i>a gândi</i> "to think"	<i>noi gândim</i> "we think"	<i>noi am gândit</i> "we thought"	<i>noi nu am / n-am gândit</i> "we did not think"	<i>noi ne-am gândit</i> "we thought"	<i>(Ne)-am gândit?</i> "Did we think?"
<i>a gândi</i> "to think"	<i>voi gândiți</i> "you think"	<i>voi ați gândit</i> "you thought"	<i>voi nu ați / n-ați gândit</i> "you did not think"	<i>voi v-ați gândit</i> "you thought"	<i>(V)-ați gândit?</i> "Did you think?"

a gândi "to think"	<i>ei/ele</i> <i>gândesc</i> "they think"	<i>ei/ele au</i> <i>gândit</i> "they thought"	<i>ei/ele nu</i> <i>au / n-au</i> <i>gândit</i> "they did not think"	<i>ei/ele s-au</i> <i>gândit</i> "they thought"	<i>(S-)au</i> <i>Gândit?</i> "did they think"
-----------------------	----------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------

**Here are some sample sentences of various uses of *perfectul compus* tense:**

1. *Ați mers și la cabana din vârful muntelui?*  
"Did you go to the cottage on top of the mountain too?"
2. *Au fost veseli tot timpul petrecerii.*  
"They were cheerful the whole party."
3. *M-am simțit bine la voi acasă.*  
"I felt good at your place."

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. *Cum a fost la Brașov?*  
"How was Brașov?"
2. *A fost frumos. Am vizitat multe muzee interesante.*  
"It was nice. I visited many interesting museums."
3. *Ai făcut poze?*  
"Did you take pictures?"

**Sample Sentences:**

1. *Am fost la mare anul trecut.*  
"I was to the seaside last year."
2. *Ce ați făcut aseară?*  
"What did you do last night?"
3. *Au plecat deja fetele?*  
"Have the girls already left?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Popular tourist places in Romania

---

Travelling in Romania can be both rewarding and challenging due to the diversity of tourist landscapes that the country has to offer. While traveling in Romania, you can enjoy breath-taking mountain sceneries, the diverse and beautiful wildlife, cities and towns that seem to have changed very little over time, and finally, you can meet the local people who are kind, welcoming and have strong cultural roots. The Transylvania region is one of the most attractive tourist destinations in Romania. This is due to well-preserved medieval sites like Sighisoara, the Bran Castle, Sibiu and Brasov.

The city of Brasov is a medieval town surrounded by the Carpathian Mountains, historically dated to 1200 A.D. While visiting the city, tourists can enjoy spectacular sceneries of mountains and hills, a wonderful mix of gothic, baroque and renaissance architecture, as well as a variety of Romanian historical attractions. From my experience, the Peles Castle is a must see destination due to its rich and beautiful historical value. It can be found nestled at the bottom of the Bucegi Mountains in the mountain town of Sinaia, and is considered by many as a stunning masterpiece of German and Renaissance architecture. The Castle was finished under the request of King Carol I in 1883 and served as a summer residence for the royal family. It has 160 rooms which are decorated with the finest artwork of European artists, Murano chandeliers and Cordoba leather-covered walls. Another crown jewel of Romania's tourist attractions are the Bucovina Monasteries. They are considered gems of Byzantine art, crafted with a one-of-a-kind architectural style that is considered unique in Europe. The murals and the frescoes on the walls illustrate the cycles of various religious events and Orthodox saints. What is most noticeable about them is the patiently-crafted artwork-with great composition and a very subtle outline-painted in a harmony of colors that enhances the beauty of the local scenery.

### Useful expression:

1. *Drum bun!*  
"Farewell!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #11

## Getting a Snack in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# 11

## ROMANIAN

1. Vânzătoare: Bună ziua. Ce doriți, domnule?
2. Masanobu: Un hamburger și o înghețată, vă rog.
3. Vânzătoare: Aici, sau la pachet?
4. Masanobu: Aici, vă rog.
5. Vânzătoare: Altceva nu doriți?
6. Masanobu: Nu, atât. Cât mă costă?
7. Vânzătoare: 10 (zece) lei.
8. Masanobu: Mulțumesc!
9. Vânzătoare: O zi plăcută!

## ENGLISH

1. Salesperson: Hello. What would you like, sir?
2. Masanobu: A hamburger and a strawberry ice-cream, please.
3. Salesperson: Here, or to go?
4. Masanobu: Here, please.
5. Salesperson: Anything else, sir?
6. Masanobu: No, that's all. How much is that?

CONT'D OVER

7. Salesperson: Ten lei.
8. Masanobu: Thank you!
9. Salesperson: Have a nice day!

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
domn	sir, mister	noun
înghețată	ice cream	noun
la pachet	to-go box	phrase
aici	here	adverb
sau	or	conjunction
cât	how much	adverb
a costa	to cost	verb
plăcut	pleasant	adjective
altceva	anything else, something else	pronoun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Bună ziua, domnule.</b> Hello, sir.</p>	<p><b>Îmi place foarte mult înghețata de vanilie.</b> "I really like vanilla ice cream."</p>
<p><b>Îmi place înghețata de vanilie.</b> "I like vanilla ice cream."</p>	<p><b>Aș vrea să luăm mâncarea la pachet.</b> "I would like to take food to go."</p>

<p><b>Aici este stația de metrou.</b> "Here is the subway station."</p>	<p><b>Aici poți să găsești tot ce ai visat.</b> "Here you can find everything you dreamed of."</p>
<p><b>Să mergem la Brașov sau la București?</b> "Should we go to Brașov or Bucharest?"</p>	<p><b>Cât costă cămașa?</b> "How much does the shirt cost?"</p>
<p><b>Cât costă până la București?</b> How much does it cost to Bucharest?</p>	<p><b>Costă cam mult pentru bugetul meu.</b> "It costs too much for my budget."</p>
<p><b>Costă mult.</b> That costs too much.</p>	<p><b>Cât costă un măr?</b> How much does an apple cost?</p>
<p><b>Am ales câteva melodii foarte plăcute.</b> "I chose some very nice songs."</p>	<p><b>Ai încercat și altceva?</b> "Did you also try anything else?"</p>
<p><b>Aveți și altceva în afară de carne?</b> "Do you have anything else besides meat?"</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **Altceva?** **"Anything else?"**

It is an indefinite pronoun (thus invariable as gender and number) used in an interrogative sentence. Here it is used in the accusative case. Its literally translation is "something else," but in this interrogative context it can be translated as "anything else?"

This pronoun used in an interrogative sentence suggests that the speaker is asking to his or her interlocutor if he or she wants something else than the things already

mentioned. This is commonly used in customer service, but also when someone wants to be informed by his or her interlocutor demands. For example, if a friend goes outside to bring something and wants to know if the other person wants anything else to be brought at the return?

**For example:**

1. *Altceva ce ți-ai mai dori?*  
"Do you want anything else?"

***Aici, sau la pachet?***  
**"Here, or to go?"**

---

It is an interrogative sentence formed by the adverb of time ***aici*** "here," the conjunction ***sau*** "or" and the expression ***la pachet*** "to go." The expression *la pachet* is made out of the preposition *la* "to" and the neuter noun *pachet* "package" in its unarticulated form, single number. It can be translated literally as "Here, or to package?"

It is a common expression used by food salespersons, such as in fast-food restaurants or coffee shops when someone asks for a product from the selling desk. It indicates that the seller is asking the buyer if he or she wants to have the product to consume in the shop or elsewhere, and therefore be packaged to be easier for transportation.

**For example:**

1. Client: Bună ziua. Aș dori o pizza quatro fromaggi, vă rog!  
Vânzător: Aici, sau la pachet?  
"Client: I want a quatro fromaggi pizza, please!  
Salesperson: Here, or to go?"

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Polite but Direct Requests**

***Altceva nu doriți?***  
**"Anything else, sir?"**

***Nu, atât. Cât mă costă?***  
**"No, that's all. How much is that?"**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use "to want" - *a vrea*
  2. use "to want" - *a dori*
  3. choose which "to want" to use, to express your wish
- 

## 1. How to use "to want" - *a vrea*

---

In Romanian, the verb *a vrea* "to want" it is used to express someone's will toward a particular action or item.

The verb is also used as an auxiliary for creating the conditional-optative mode in the present tense for other verbs (particularly, its imperfect conjugation: *(eu) aș, (tu) ai, (el/ea) ar, (noi) am, (voi) ați, (ei) ar* - "I/you/he/she/we/you/they would" + verb in infinitive).

A *vrea* could be used to communicate multiple nuances in a phrase. Here are some of the most important ones:

### -Formulating a specific wish

1. Indicative mode + noun/verb in conjunctive (eg. *Vreau o cafea cu lapte.* "I want a coffee with milk.")
2. Conditional optative mode + noun/verb in conjunctive (eg. *Aș vrea să plec la mare.* "I would like to go to the seaside.")

### -Formulating interrogative sentences

1. Interrogating someone's intentions or preferences? (eg. *Ce vrei să faci după ce termini studiile?* "What do you want to do after graduating?")
2. Asking for help in a polite manner using the conditional optative mode (eg. *Ați vrea să mă ajutați să urc acest bagaj, vă rog?* "Would you like to help me pick up this luggage, please?")
3. Volunteering to help someone (eg. *Vreți să vă ajut cu plasele?* "Would you like me to help you with the bags?")
4. Threatening someone (eg. *Vrei scandal?* "Do you want to fight?")

### -As a figure of speech

1. Introducing the topic of a discourse (eg. *Aș vrea să vă spun ceva despre Mihai.* "I would like to tell you something about Mihai.")
2. Auto-correction or emphasis (eg. *Ceea ce vreau să spun este că...* "What I really want to say is that...")

A *vrea* it is an irregular verb - *a vrea / vrut*.

### A *vrea* conjugation chart

Present	Past	Future	Conditional-optative (present)*
singular			
<i>eu vreau</i> "I want"	<i>eu am vrut</i> "I wanted"	<i>eu voi vrea</i> "I will want"	<i>eu aș vrea</i> "I would want"
<i>tu vrei</i> "you want"	<i>tu ai vrut</i> "you wanted"	<i>tu vei vrea</i> "you will want"	<i>tu ai vrea</i> "you would want"
<i>el / ea vrea</i> "he/she/it wants"	<i>el /ea a vrut</i> "he/she/it wanted"	<i>el/ ea va vrea</i> "he/she/it will want"	<i>el / ea ar vrea</i> "he/she/it would want"
plural			
<i>noi vrem</i> "we want"	<i>noi am vrut</i> "we wanted"	<i>noi vom vrea</i> "we will want"	<i>noi am vrea</i> "we would want"
<i>voi vreți</i> "You want"	<i>Voi ați vrut</i> "you wanted"	<i>voi veți vrea</i> "you will want"	<i>voi ați vrea</i> "you would want"
<i>ei / ele vor</i> "they want"	<i>ei / ele au vrut</i> "they wanted"	<i>ei/ ele vor vrea</i> "they will want"	<i>ei / ele ar vrea</i> "they would want"

\* It is a common verbal mode for *a vrea* especially when formulating polite requests.

### Here are few sample sentences using various forms of the verb *a vrea*

1. **Aș vrea** să luăm prânzul la terasă. Ce zici?  
"I would want to have lunch on the terrace. What do you say?"

2. **Ei nu vor vrea** să meargă cu noi la restaurant.  
"They will not want to go with us to the restaurant."
3. **A vrut** să ne arate că poate să ne depășească?  
"Did he want to show us he can overcome us?"

## 2. How to use "to want" - a dori

---

In Romanian, the verb *a dori* "to want / to wish" is used to express someone's wish, intention, or preference regarding a particular action or item.

*A dori* could be used to communicate multiple nuances in a phrase. Here are some of the most important ones:

### -Formulating a specific wish

1. Indicative mode + noun/verb in conjunctive (e.g. *Ei doresc plăcintă de mere cu scorțișoară*. "They want apple pie with cinnamon.")
2. Conditional optative mode + noun/verb in conjunctive (e.g. *Mi-aș dori foarte mult să vizitez Japonia anul ăsta*. "I would very much like to visit Japan this year.")

### -Greeting someone:

1. E.g. *Vă doresc multă sănătate și bucurii*. "I wish you strong health and joy."

### -Formulating interrogative sentences

1. Asking someone about his or her wishes or preferences (e.g. *Ce ați dori pentru felul doi?* "What would you want for the main course?")
2. Asking about someone's intention regarding an action (e.g. *Ce doriți să facem mai departe?* "What do you wish to do next?")
3. Inviting someone to join an action in an interrogative manner (e.g. *Doriți să jucați o partidă de șah cu noi?* "Do you wish to play chess with us?")
4. Volunteering to help someone (ex. *Dorești să te ajut cu tema la matematică?* "Do you want me to help you with the math homework?")

## -As a figure of speech

1. Introducing the topic of discourse (e.g. *Aș dori să vă povestesc puțin despre România.* "I would like to tell you a little about Romania.")
2. Introducing something that is desirable or undesirable (e.g. *E de dorit să nu conduci multe ore fără pauză.* "It is desirable not to drive many hours without a break.")
3. Expressing professional objectives (e.g. *Doresc să lucrez ca asistent manager în compania dumneavoastră.* "I want to work as a manager's assistant in your company.")
4. Expressing time availability (e.g. *Se poate oricând doriți.* "Anytime you want.")

*A dori* is a fourth conjugation verb - *a dori / dorit*.

### A dori conjugation chart

Present	Past	Future	Conditional-optative (present)*
singular			
<i>eu doresc</i> "I want/ wish"	<i>eu am dorit</i> "I wanted/ wished"	<i>eu voi dori</i> "I will want/ wish"	<i>eu aș dori</i> "I would want/ wish"
<i>tu dorești</i> "you want/ wish"	<i>tu ai dorit</i> "you wanted/ wished"	<i>tu vei dori</i> "you will want/ wish"	<i>tu ai dori</i> "you would want/ wish"
<i>el / ea dorește</i> "he/she/it wants/ wishes"	<i>el /ea a dorit</i> "he/she/it wanted/ wished"	<i>el/ ea va dori</i> "he/she/it will want/ wish"	<i>el / ea ar dori</i> "he/she/it would want/ wish"
plural			
<i>noi dorim</i> "we want/ wish"	<i>noi am dorit</i> "we wanted/ wished"	<i>noi vom dori</i> "we will want/ wish"	<i>noi am dori</i> "we would want/ wish"
<i>voi doriți</i> "you want/ wish"	<i>voi ați dorit</i> "you wanted/ wished"	<i>voi veți dori</i> "you will want/ wish"	<i>voi ați dori</i> "you would want/ wish"

<i>ei / ele doresc</i> "they want/ wish"	<i>ei / ele au dorit</i> "they wanted/ wished"	<i>ei/ ele vor dori</i> "they will want/ wish"	<i>ei / ele ar dori</i> "they would want/ wish"
---------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

\* It is a common verbal mode for *a dori* especially when formulating polite requests.

### Here are few sample sentences using various forms of the verb *a dori*

1. **Aș dori** să mergem la munte weekendul următor.  
"I would like to go to the mountains next weekend."
2. **El n-ar vrea** să petreacă atâta timp la cumpărături.  
"He would not want to spend that much time shopping."
3. **Ți-ai dori** să poți să vorbești japoneză?  
"Would you like to be able to speak Japanese?"

### 3. How to choose which "to want" to use, to express your wish

The two verbs are usually synonymous. Hence, there are many situations when both verbs, *a vrea* and *a dori*, could be used interchangeably. However, their meaning may differ depending on the context. Usually, *a dori* is used in more formal situations when formulating a request, while *a vrea* is used in more informal contexts. Moreover, the conditional optative mode is also preferable in the formal context.

### Here is a chart to illustrate various contexts of using *a vrea* or *a dori* to express a more formal or informal wish and also to be polite

Informal request	Informal and polite request	Formal and polite request
<i>Vreau o cafea.</i> "I want a coffee."	<i>Doresc o cafea.</i> "I want a coffee."  <i>Aș vrea o cafea.</i> "I would want a coffee."	<i>Aș dori o cafea. / (... , vă rog.)</i> "I would like a coffee. / (... , please.)"

There are also two other important criteria to help you select which of the *a vrea* and *a dori* verbs is more proper in certain contexts:

#### -Urgency of needs and desires:

*A vrea* expresses more immediate and concrete needs/desires (e.g. *Vreau să merg în parc.* "I want to go to the park."), whilst *a dori* is more about the desirability

itself and the speaker's thoughts about the possibility of the subject of the desire (e.g. *Aș dori să mergem acasă de sărbători*. "I would like to go home for the holidays.") Therefore, *a dori* is more often used in the conditional optative mode, expressing rather a potential action that is wanted, and less used in the present tense (e.g. *eu doresc*).

### -Intensity of the wish:

A *vrea* is more about immediate needs and attainable wishes, whereas *a dori* is more about the more intense and long-lasting wishes. (e.g. *Vreau să plecăm la ora trei (3)*. "I want us to leave at three o'clock." *Îmi doresc să petrecem mai mult timp împreună*. "I wish we could spend more time together.")

We listed below the most common nuances associated with one or both of the two verbs.

### Chart with preferred uses of *a vrea* or *a dori* verbs depending of the intended meaning of the sentence:

Intended meaning	Use of <i>a vrea</i>	Use of <i>a dori</i>
Specific need	X <i>Vreau sarea.</i> "I want the salt."	
Wish / Desire		X <i>Mi-aș dori să mergem mai des la munte.</i> "I would like to go more often to the mountains."
Preference	X <i>Aș vrea acest fel de mâncare, vă rog.</i> "I would like this plate please."	X <i>Aș dori acest fel de mâncare, vă rog.</i> "I would like this plate please."
Greeting		X <i>Vă doresc tuturor noroc!</i> "I wish you all good luck!"
Intention	X <i>Ce vrei să faci mai departe?</i> "What do you want to do next?"	

Request	X (less polite) <i>Vreau doi hamburgeri.</i> "I want two hamburgers."	X (more polite) <i>Aș dori doi hamburgeri, vă rog.</i> "I would like two hamburgers please."
Offering something (interrogative)	X (informal) <i>Vrei supă?</i> "Do you want soup?"	X (formal) <i>Doriți supă?</i> "Do you like soup?"
Desirability		X <i>E de dorit să nu consumați alcool.</i> "It is desirable not to drink alcohol."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Bună ziua. Ce doriți, domnule?*  
"Hello. What would you like, sir?"
2. *Aici, vă rog.*  
"Here, please."
3. *Nu, atât. Cât mă costă?*  
"No, that's all. How much is that?"

### Sample Sentences:

1. *Cât durează, vă rog?*  
"How long it takes, please?"
2. *Scuzați-mă, vreau să plec.*  
"Excuse me, I want to go."
3. *Nu vă supărați, îmi puteți da sarea? Mulțumesc.*  
"Excuse me, can you give me the salt? Thank you."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Food customs

The Romanian cuisine is considered to have a great variety of dishes for all tastes. This is due to the influences of the continuous waves of people from different cultures that have come into contact with Romanians either by conquering (like the ancient Romans), trading (ancient Greeks, Slavic, Magyar neighbors) or residency (Saxons and Turks have settled here). The most common ingredients that Romanian chefs use for their specialties are: beef, lamb and pork, fish, vegetables and fruits, and in some creations, even dairy products. Speaking of eating habits, Romanians eat three times during the day and dinner is considered to be the most important meal of the day. Breakfast is light, consisting of sandwiches, dairy products, pastry and fruits. Lunch takes place between 1 and 3 PM with options that include a first dish (soup or borsch), the main course dish (various types of meats cooked in different ways and a side dish or salads), and usually a dessert afterward. During dinner time, Romanians either enjoy their meals with their families or invite their close friends to share food and spend time together. During the year, there are many moments of celebration when Romanians cook specialties: during Christmas there is a local tradition to eat pork meat cooked in various ways; during Easter, they eat a lot of lamb; and on special occasions like the 1st of May (International Work Day - a day off), Romanians are accustomed to going out in nature and cooking "Mititei" (rolled meat) on a barbecue. If you are invited to dinner or a special occasion ceremony (e.g. wedding evening), the first thing to expect is that your appetite will be challenged with many delicious dishes, desserts and cakes. Keep some space in your stomach because a Romanian host will want you, as the guest, to try each dish and eat everything you have on your plate. Usually, if you refuse, it is considered an offense to the host. So, if you want to show appreciation for the food, finish your first dish and ask for seconds. Usually, special ceremonies have at least 3 or 4 dishes included, served between breaks for chatting or dancing with the other guests.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Poftă bună!*  
"Enjoy your meal!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #12

# What are Some Romanian Easter Traditions?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 12 Cultural Insight

# **12**

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: În România se sărbătorește Paștele?
2. Andreea: Da, este una din cele mai mari sărbători anuale din România.
3. Masanobu: Și ce faci de obicei de Paște?
4. Andreea: În România se vopsesc ouă fierte roșii și se ciocnesc în familie.
5. Masanobu: Se ciocnesc?
6. Andreea: Da, tu ții oul tău în mână, iar eu îl lovesc cu oul meu.
7. Andreea: Dacă se sparge, poți să îl mănânci, dacă nu, ciocnești mai departe cu altcineva.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: Do you celebrate Easter in Romania?
2. Andreea: Yes, it's one of the biggest annual holidays in Romania.
3. Masanobu: And what do you usually do on Easter?
4. Andreea: In Romania, boiled eggs are painted in red and you knock them with your family.
5. Masanobu: You knock them?
6. Andreea: Yes, for example, you hold your egg in your hand and I hit it with my egg.

CONT'D OVER

7. Andreea: If it breaks, you can eat it; if not, you keep on knocking eggs with other people.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
Paște	Easter	noun
sărbătoare	holiday	noun
a vopsi	decorate	verb
a ciocni	knock	verb
ou	egg	noun
a lovi	kick	verb
a sparge	break	verb
anual	yearly	adjective
mai departe	further	adverb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Paștele acesta mergem la munte cu întreaga familie.</b></p> <p>"This Easter we will go to the mountains with the whole family."</p>	<p><b>Sunt multe sărbători sâmbăta anul acesta.</b></p> <p>"This year many holidays will be on a Saturday."</p>
<p><b>Și-a vopsit mașina în verde.</b></p> <p>"He painted his car in green."</p>	<p><b>A ciocnit la ușă însă nu a răspuns nimeni.</b></p> <p>"He knocked at the door, but no one responded."</p>
<p><b>Mărimea unui ou de struț este remarcabilă.</b></p> <p>"The size of an ostrich's egg is remarkable."</p>	<p><b>A lovit mingea cu putere.</b></p> <p>"He hit the ball hard."</p>

---

**Geamul acesta se poate sparge foarte ușor.**

"This glass can break very easily."

**Evaluarea anuală nu a ieșit prea bine de data asta.**

"The annual assessment did not go work out well this time."

---

**Poți merge mai departe să cauți șoseaua.**

"You can go further and look for the road."

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***Ou fiert*** **"Boiled egg"**

---

It is a compound structure formed from the neuter noun **ou** "egg" in its singular form and the masculine form of the adjective **fiert** "boiled." It has the syntactic function of a direct complement and in the accusative form responds to the question "what?"

The structure defines a way of cooking eggs by boiling them as well as the name of the food. In Romania, on Easter, the boiled eggs are painted in red or other colors as a religious ceremony and then used to serve the custom of knocking eggs with friends and family and also eaten afterward.

#### **For example:**

1. *Dimineața îmi place să mânc oă fierte.*  
"In the morning, I like to eat boiled eggs."

### ***Mai departe*** **"Further"**

---

It is an adverb of time in its comparative form, composed from the prefix of superior comparison **mai** "more" and the adverb of place **departe** "far." It literally means "more far."

It is used to express that an action will take place further away, after another action that the speaker previously referred to.

In different circumstances (mostly when referring to a place), the same structure could become an adverb of place (ex. *Orașul este mai departe decât credeam.* "The city is farther then I thought.")

### For example:

1. *Sunt curios ce se va întâmpla mai departe.*  
"I am curious what will happen further."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Reflexive Voice to Express General Customs

***În România se vopsesc ouă fierte roșii și se ciocnesc în familie.***  
"In Romania, boiled eggs are painted in red and you knock them with your family."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use general phrases to express general customs and habits
2. form verbs in the reflexive voice
3. use the reflexive voice and when to use it

---

### 1. How to use general phrases to express general customs and habits

---

In Romanian, the neuter noun *obicei* (singular)/*obiceiuri* (plural) is used to refer to both "a habit" and "a custom." Also the feminine noun *tradiție/tradiții* can be used to refer to "customs."

In order to refer to or describe a custom or a habit, you could use one of these structures:

---

**Defining a custom or habit**

**Describing a custom or habit**

---

---

**General rule:**

articulated noun coming from participle + noun in dative

**Examples:**

*Jocul călușarilor*

"The game of calusars"

*Culesul viei*

"The harvest of vineyard"

*Împodobitul bradului*

"The Christmas tree decoration"

*Căratul apei*

"The water carriage"

**General rules (alternative):**

- verb in passive voice (to be + participle) + noun
- verbs in impersonal reflexive voice (reflexive pronoun *se* + infinitive verb) + noun
- enumeration of verbs in present simple tense

**Examples:**

*Este tăiat porcul de Crăciun.* (rule a.)

"The Christmas pig is cut."

*Se ciocnesc ouăle roșii de Paște.* (rule b.)

"You knock the red Easter eggs."

*Facem sarmale, împodobim bradul și deschidem cadourile de Crăciun.* (rule c.)

"We make stuffed cabbage, we decorate the tree, and we open up the Christmas presents."

---

## 2. How to form verbs in the reflexive voice

---

Reflexive verbs generally have an active correspondent (very few are used in reflexive voice *a-și închipui* "to imagine," *a se teme* "to be afraid"). In the reflexive voice, the subject of action is the same as the direct complement or the indirect complement in dative case.

**Constructing the reflexive voice structure rule:****Reflexive pronoun in Dative case**

*îmi, îți, își, ne, vă, își* + verb

E.g. **Îmi vine** greu să plec. "It is hard for me to go."

**Reflexive pronoun in Accusative case**

*mă, te, se, ne, vă, se\** + verb

E.g. **Mă gândesc** să plec. "I am thinking of leaving."

\* Note that the reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons plural are identical for Dative and Accusative cases.

**Illustration of verbs conjugation in reflexive voice chart**

	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Present simple</b>	<b>Past simple</b>	<b>Future</b>
<b>Active</b>	<i>a aminti</i> "to mention"	<i>eu amintesc</i> "I mention"	<i>eu am amintit</i> "I mentioned"	<i>eu voi aminti</i> "I will mention"
Active	<i>a aminti</i> "to mention"	<i>tu amintești</i> "you mention"	<i>tu ai amintit</i> "you mentioned"	<i>tu vei aminti</i> "you will mention"
	<i>a aminti</i> "to mention"		<i>el/ea a amintit</i> "he/she mentioned"	<i>el/ea va aminti</i> "he/she will mention"
<i>el/ea amintește</i> "he/she mentions"				
	<i>a aminti</i> "to mention"		<i>noi am amintit</i> "we mentioned"	<i>noi vom aminti</i> "we will mention"
<i>noi amintim</i> "we mention"				
	<i>a aminti</i> "to mention"		<i>voi ați amintit</i> "you mentioned"	<i>voi veți aminti</i> "you will mention"
<i>voi amintiți</i> "you mention"				

	a aminti "to mention"		
<i>ei/ele amintesc</i> "they mention"		<i>ei/ele au amintit</i> "they mentioned"	<i>ei/ele vor aminti</i> "they will mention"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>eu trezesc</i> "I wake up"	<i>eu am trezit</i> "I woke up"	<i>eu voi trezi</i> "I will wake up"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>tu trezești</i> "you wake up"	<i>tu ai trezit</i> "you woke up"	<i>tu vei trezi</i> "you will wake up"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>el/ea trezește</i> "he/she wakes up"	<i>el/ea a trezit</i> "he/she woke up"	<i>el/ea va trezi</i> "he/she will wake up"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>noi trezim</i> "we wake up"	<i>noi am trezit</i> "we woke up"	<i>noi vom trezi</i> "we will wake up"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>voi treziți</i> "you wake up"	<i>voi ați trezit</i> "you woke up"	<i>voi veți trezi</i> "you will wake up"
<i>a trezi</i> "to wake up"	<i>ei/ele trezesc</i> "they wake up"	<i>ei/ele au trezit</i> "they woke up"	<i>ei/ele vor trezi</i> "they will wake up"

	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Present simple</b>	<b>Past simple</b>	<b>Future</b>
<b>Reflexive</b>	<i>a-și aminti</i> "to remember" (Dative case)	<i>eu îmi amintesc</i> "I remember"	<i>eu mi-am amintit</i> "I remembered"	<i>eu îmi voi aminti</i> "I will remember"
Reflexive	<i>a-și aminti</i> "to remember" (Dative case)	<i>tu îți amintești</i> "you remember"	<i>tu ți-ai amintit</i> "you remembered"	<i>tu îți vei aminti</i> "you will remember"

<i>el/ea își amintește</i> "he/she remembers"	a-și aminti "to remember" (Dativ e case)	<i>el/ea și-a amintit</i> "he/she remembered"	<i>el/ea își va aminti</i> "he/she will remember"
<i>noi ne amintim</i> "we remember"	a-și aminti "to remember" (Dativ e case)	<i>noi ne-am amintit</i> "we remembered"	<i>noi ne vom aminti</i> "we will remember"
<i>voi vă amintiți</i> "you remember"	a-și aminti "to remember" (Dativ e case)	<i>voi v-ați amintit</i> "you remembered"	<i>voi vă veți aminti</i> "you will remember"
<i>ei/ele își amintesc</i> "they remember"	a-și aminti "to remember" (Dativ e case)	<i>ei/ele și-au amintit</i> "they remembered"	<i>ei/ele își vor aminti</i> "they will remember"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>eu mă trezesc</i> "I wake up"	<i>eu m-am trezit</i> "I woke up"	<i>eu mă voi trezi</i> "I will wake up"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>tu te trezești</i> "you wake up"	<i>tu te-ai trezit</i> "you woke up"	<i>tu te vei trezi</i> "you will wake up"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>el/ea se trezește</i> "he/she wakes up"	<i>el/ea s-a trezit</i> "he/she woke up"	<i>el/ea se va trezi</i> "he/she will wake up"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>noi ne trezim</i> "we wake up"	<i>noi ne-am trezit</i> "we woke up"	<i>noi ne vom trezi</i> "we will wake up"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>voi vă treziți</i> "you wake up"	<i>voi v-ați trezit</i> "you woke up"	<i>voi vă veți trezi</i> "you will wake up"
<i>a se trezi</i> "to wake up" (Accusative case)	<i>ei/ele se trezesc</i> "they wake up"	<i>ei/ele s-au trezit</i> "they woke up"	<i>ei/ele se vor trezi</i> "they will wake up"

**Here are three sample sentences of using the reflexive voice:**

1. **Mașina se va vopsi curând.**  
"The car will be painted soon."
2. **Nu îmi găsesc papucii.**  
"I cannot find my slippers."
3. **Ei nu-și amintesc drumul către casa bunicii.**  
"They do not remember the way to their grandmother's house."

### 3. How to use the reflexive voice and when to use it

Here is an example of how the active and reflexive voices differ:

Active voice	Reflexive voice
<p>Andreea <b>a amintit</b> de prăjitura de ieri. "Andreea mentioned about the cake from yesterday."</p>	<p>Andreea <b>și-a amintit</b> de prăjitura de ieri. "Andreea remembered the cake from yesterday."</p>

As you can observe, the reflexive variant of a verb can sometimes have a different meaning than its active form. For example, *a reveni* "to return" with *a-și reveni* "to recover" or *a uita* "to forget" with *a se uita* "to watch."

The main situations in which we use reflexive verbs in Romania could be:

#### -The subject is a direct complement

1. E.g. **Mă duc** să iau masa cu sora mea. "I'm going to have lunch with my sister."

#### -The subject is an indirect complement in dative case

1. E.g. **Îți place** tabloul meu? "Do you like my painting?"

#### -Expressing reciprocity

1. E.g. *De fiecare dată când ne vedem, ne salutăm.* "Every time we see each other, we greet each other."

#### -Expressing the transposition from one state to another

1. E.g. **Vă supărați** dacă merg eu înainte? "Do you mind if I go first?"

### **-The impersonal reflexive**

1. E.g. **Se spune** că aici apăreau fecioarele fermecate. "It is said that the enchanted virgins appeared here."

### **-The reflexive used with a passive meaning (the agent of the action is missing)**

1. E.g. Aici **se vând** ziare. "Here they sell newspapers."

### **-This is also frequent in instructions, indications or interdictions:**

1. E.g. *Se interzice* parcare. "Parking is forbidden."

### **Here are three more sample sentences illustrating the use of reflexive voice:**

1. **S-a deschis** un magazin nou pe colțul străzii.  
"A new shop was open on the corner of the street."
2. Noi românii **ne sărbătorim** în fiecare an de 1 decembrie.  
"We Romanians celebrate ourselves every year on the 1st of December."
3. Ai văzut ce **și-au cumpărat**?  
"Have you seen what they bought?"

### **Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. În România se sărbătorește Paștele?  
"Do you celebrate Easter in Romania?"
2. În România se vopsesc ouă fierte roșii și se ciocnesc în familie.  
"In Romania, boiled eggs are painted in red and you knock them with your family."
3. Dacă se sparge, poți să îl mănânci, dacă nu, ciocnești mai departe cu altcineva.  
"If it breaks, you can eat it; if not, you keep on knocking eggs with other people."

## Sample Sentences:

---

1. *În localitatea în care m-am născut se taie porci de Crăciun.*  
"In my hometown we cut pigs for Christmas."
2. *Se pun mărtișoare în piept de 1 Martie.*  
"We wear mărtișoare on our chest on the 1st of March."
3. *Se cântă colinde în Ajun.*  
"Christmas carols are sung on the Eve."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Easter in Romania

---

Romanians consider the Resurrection of Christ as one of the most meaningful and beautiful Orthodox holidays in the Easter tradition. The Easter holiday has the power to bring all the family members together to celebrate the holiday with lots of traditions and customs. One of those traditions is the red painted eggs that are always present on a Romanian's table during this holiday. The red color of the Easter eggs represents the blood that has been shed by Christ during his Crucifixion. According to the tradition, people who knock red eggs on the first day of Easter will meet each other in the afterlife. Most of the countries in Eastern Europe that celebrate Easter give the same meaning to the red painted Easter eggs. Israel, for example, celebrates Easter as a solemn and sacred tradition in which people from around the world walk the Via Dolorosa, the same road Jesus took on the day He was nailed to the Cross. If you ever are invited to a Romanian home during Easter, one of the things that you should know is that during the night before Easter, Romanians go to church to light a candle and bring the Resurrection light back to their homes. The beauty of the moment is that people share the holy fire of their candle with others. One of the things you need to be careful with is that the Easter Bunny is not part of the Easter Romanian Tradition, even though it might be celebrated by modern families.

### Useful expression:

1. *Hristos a înviat!*  
"Christ has risen!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #13

# Going on an Overseas Trip from Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# **13**

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Bine ai venit în Japonia, Andreea!
2. Andreea: Mulțumesc! Sunt atât de încântată! Care sunt planurile?
3. Masanobu: Mai întâi îți voi arăta centrul orașului, apoi vom merge la mare.
4. Andreea: Ce frumos. Apoi?
5. Masanobu: Apoi, a doua zi mergem pe muntele Fuji.
6. Masanobu: În a 3-a (treia) și a 4-a (patra) zi vom merge să vedem florile de cireș sakura.
7. Andreea: De abia aștept!
8. Masanobu: Sper că va fi o excursie plăcută pentru tine.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: Welcome to Japan, Andreea!
2. Andreea: Thank you! I'm so excited! What are the plans?
3. Masanobu: First, I'll show you the center of the city, then we will go to the seaside.
4. Andreea: So nice! Then?
5. Masanobu: Then, on the second day, we will go to Mount Fuji.
6. Masanobu: On the 3rd and 4th day, we'll go see the cherry blossoms.

CONT'D OVER

7. Andreea: I can't wait!
8. Masanobu: I hope it will be a great trip for you.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a veni	come	verb
încântat	excited	adjective
plan	plan	noun
întâi	first	adverb
mare	sea	noun
munte	mountain	noun
floare	flower	noun
cireș	cherry tree	noun
spera	hope	verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Ați venit.</b> "(You) came."</p>	<p><b>Sunt foarte încântat că mergem la concert!</b> "I am very excited for going to the concert!"</p>
<p><b>Dacă totul merge conform planului, ne putem considera norocoși.</b> "If everything goes according to plan, we can consider ourselves lucky."</p>	<p><b>Întotdeauna a ieșit primul la concursurile de atletism din școală.</b> "He always came out first in athletic contests in school."</p>

<p><b>Mergem întâi să mâncăm?</b> "Are we going to eat first?"</p>	<p><b>Nu vreau bilet la clasa întâi.</b> "I don't want a First Class ticket."</p>
<p><b>Îmi place să mă uit la marea învolburată.</b> "I like to watch the stormy sea."</p>	<p><b>Îmi este frică de mare și de fauna ei.</b> "I'm afraid of the sea and its fauna".</p>
<p><b>Am urcat pe un munte numit Fuji în timpul vacanței mele în Japonia.</b> "I climbed a mountain called Fuji during my trip to Japan."</p>	<p><b>Ce sentiment înălțător e să stai pe vârful muntelui.</b> "What an uplifting feeling to stand on the top of a mountain."</p>
<p><b>El pune apă la flori în fiecare dimineață.</b> "He waters flowers every morning."</p>	<p><b>Când eram mic am plantat un cireș.</b> "When I was little, I planted a cherry tree."</p>

**Sperăm să avem vreme bună pe munți.**

"We hope to have good weather in the mountains."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***Bine ai venit!***  
**"Welcome!"**

It is an imperative sentence formed from the positive form of **bine** "well" modal adverb and the second person singular number of the verb **a veni** "to come" in its simple past tense. It literally means "well you came."

This is the most common expression to welcome someone that is visiting you. In more formal context, the second person plural number is used to form the same expression-*Bine ați venit!*

The expression is used as a an independent phrase in imperative.

## For example:

1. *Bine ai venit în grădina mea!*  
"Welcome to my garden!"

## **Sper că...** **"I hope that..."**

---

It is a structure formed from the verb *a spera* "to hope" and the conjunction *că* "that." It literally means "I hope that."

It is used to express the speaker's expectation toward a certain situation or action. In case of a less emphasized expectation, or just an intention or wish of the speaker, the conjunction *că* could be replaced with the conjunction *să* "to." (ex. *Sper să fac azi curățenie în dulap.* "I hope to clean up the closet today.")

All other persons, numbers and tenses of the verb conjugation can be used (ex. *Am sperat că vom merge mai des pe munte.* "We hoped we would go to the mountains more often.")

Sometimes, a sentence starting with a very emphasized *Sper că...* could also transmit a moralizing or authoritative statement (ex. *Sper că te ții de plan!* "I hope you keep your plan!")

## For example:

1. *Sper că prindem trenul.*  
"I hope we catch the train."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Using Verbs to Describe Future Events**

***Mai întâi îți voi arăta centrul orașului, apoi vom merge la mare.***  
**"First I will show you the center of the city, then we will go to the seaside."**

---

### In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. recognize the future tense in Romanian
2. conjugate the simple future tense

### 3. use frequent verbs and their conjugation in simple future tense

---

#### 1. How to recognize the future tense in Romanian

---

The future tense refers to the form of verbs expressing actions that will happen in a moment that is posterior to the moment of speaking.

In Romanian, there are several forms of expressing the future tense.

The most common one, also called the literary future, is created with the help of the **auxiliary verb a voi "will" + infinitive of the verb to conjugate**. The same format is used for all verbs, including the irregular ones (e.g. **Eu voi pleca la munte**. "I will go to the mountains.")

Other forms of expressing the future, preferred in rather informal contexts, are:

- **o + conjunctive of the verb to conjugate** (e.g. **O să merg** la mare. "I will go to the seaside.")

- **Indicative present of a avea "to have" + conjunctive of the verb to conjugate** (e.g. **Am să merg** mâine cu tine. "I will go tomorrow with you.")

- **The verb a urma "to follow" at the third person in indicative present + conjunctive of the verb to conjugate** (e.g. **Urmează să meargă** în Japonia în curând. "He is going to go to Japan soon.")

**Here are some sample sentences using various forms of the future tense in Romanian:**

1. **Vom face** atâta planuri împreună!  
"We will make so many plans together!"
2. **N-o să urcăm** pe munte mâine de dimineață. or **Nu o să urcăm** pe munte mâine de dimineață.  
"We will not climb the mountains tomorrow morning."
3. **Au să termine** până venim noi de la mare.  
"They will be finishing by the time we come back from the seaside."

#### 2. How to conjugate the simple future tense

---

In order to form the simple future in Romania you must use the following formula:

---

*Viitorul literar* "simple future" = aux. *a voi* "will"\* + infinitive of the verb to conjugate

---

\* (eu) voi / (tu) vei / (el/ea) va / (noi) vom / (voi) veți / (ei/ele) vor "I / you / he/she/it / we / you / they will"

## Simple future conjugation chart

<b>INFINITIV "INFINITIVE"</b>	<b>PREZENT "PRESENT SIMPLE"</b>	<b>VIITORUL LITERAR / SIMPLU "SIMPLE FUTURE"</b>
<i>a fi</i> "to be"	<i>eu sunt, tu ești, el/ea este, noi suntem, voi sunteți, ei sunt</i> "I am, you are, he/she/it is, we are, you are, they are"	<i>(eu) voi fi, (tu) vei fi, (el/ea) va fi, noi vom fi, voi veți fi, ei vor fi</i> "I will be, you will be, he/she/it will be, we will be, you will be, they will be"
<i>a avea</i> "to have"	<i>eu am, tu ai, el/ea are, noi avem, voi aveți, ei au</i> "I have, you have, he/she/it has, we have, you have, they have"	<i>eu voi avea, tu vei avea, el/ea va avea, noi vom avea, voi veți avea, ei vor avea</i> "I will have, you will have, he/she/it will have, we will have, you will have, they will have"
<i>a veni</i> "to come"	<i>eu vin, tu vii, el/ea vine, noi venim, voi veniți, ei vin</i> "I come, you come, he/she/it comes, we come, you come, they come"	<i>eu voi veni, tu vei veni, el/ea va veni, noi vom veni, voi veți veni, ei vor veni</i> "I will come, you will come, he/she/it will come, we will come, you will come, they will come"
<i>a prinde</i> "to catch"	<i>eu prind, tu prinzi, el/ea prinde, noi prindem, voi prindeți, ei prind</i> "I catch, you catch, he/she/it catches, we catch, you catch, they catch"	<i>eu voi prinde, tu vei prinde, el/ea va prinde, noi vom prinde, voi veți prinde, ei vor prinde</i> "I will catch, you will catch, he/she/it will catch, we will catch, you will catch, will catch knew"

<p><i>a merge</i> "to walk / to go (to)"</p>	<p><i>eu merg, tu mergi, el/ea merge, noi mergem, voi mergeți, ei merg</i>          "I walk / go (to), you walk / go (to), he/she/it walks / goes (to), we walk / go (to), you walk / go (to), they walk / go (to)"</p>	<p><i>eu voi merge, tu vei merge, el/ea va merge, noi vom merge, voi veți merge, ei vor merge</i>          "I will walk / to (go), you will walk / to (go), he/she/it will walk / to (go), we will walk / to (go), you will walk / to (go), they will walk / to (go)"</p>
<p><i>a aștepta</i> "to wait"</p>	<p><i>eu aștept, tu aștepti, el/ea așteaptă, noi așteptăm, voi așteptați, ei așteaptă</i>          "I wait, you wait, he/she/it waits, we wait, you wait, they wait"</p>	<p><i>eu voi aștepta, tu vei aștepta, el/ea va aștepta, noi vom aștepta, voi veți aștepta, ei vor aștepta</i>          "I will wait, you will wait, he/she/it will wait, we will wait, you will wait, they will wait"</p>
<p><i>a spera</i> "to hope"</p>	<p><i>eu sper, tu sperii, el/ea speră, noi sperăm, voi sperați, ei speră</i>          "I hope, you hope, he/she/it hopes, we hope, you hope, they hope"</p>	<p><i>eu voi spera, tu vei spera, el/ea va spera, noi vom spera, voi veți spera, ei vor spera</i>          "I will hope, you will hope, he/she/it will hope, we will hope, you will hope, they will hope"</p>
<p><i>a arăta</i> "to show"</p>	<p><i>eu arăt, tu arăți, el/ea arată, noi arătăm, voi arătați, ei arată</i>          "I show, you show, he/she/it shows, we show, you show, they show"</p>	<p><i>eu voi arăta, tu vei arăta, el/ea va arăta, noi vom arăta, voi veți arăta, ei vor arăta</i>          "I will show, you will show, he/she/it will show, we will show, you will show, they will show"</p>

**Here are few more sample sentences using the simple future tense in Romanian**

1. Când **veți ajunge** la muntele Fuji, să faceți o poză și pentru noi.  
 "When you get to Mount Fuji, take a picture for us too."

2. **Vă vom aștepta** în gară la Brașov.  
"We will wait for you at the central station in Brasov."
3. *Cred că **vom avea** mai mult timp de povești dacă plecăm cu avionul de 9.*  
"I think we will have more time to chat if we leave on the 9 o'clock airplane."

### 3. How to use frequent verbs and their conjugation in simple future tense

---

Most frequently, the simple future tense expresses **temporal posteriority** (e.g. *Mâine **voi lucra**.* "Tomorrow I will work.").

There are still some other situations in which this receives specific connotations. These are the most frequent:

**Introducing the subject of a discourse** (e.g. *În prezentarea mea, **mă voi referi** la...* "In my presentation, I will refer to...")

#### Expressing subjective modalities or attitudes:

1. **Certainty** (e.g. *Sigur **va ploua**.* "It will surely rain.")
2. **Promise** (e.g. ***Voi face** curățenie imediat.* "I will clean up right away.")
3. **Encouragement** (e.g. *Totul **va fi** bine.* "Everything will be fine.")
4. **Doubt (in interrogations)** (e.g. ***Veți ajunge** la timp pentru concert?* "Will you arrive in time for the concert?")
5. **Prediction / Warning / Threat** (e.g. ***Nu va ieși** prea bine.* "This will not end too well.")

A special situation is when the other forms of expressing the future tense are used, to **express posteriority from the past**. This requires using the verb *a avea* "to have" or the verb *a urma* "to follow" in their imperfect form + conjunctive (e.g. ***Aveam să plec** la mare. / **Urma să plec** la mare.* "I was going to go to the seaside.")

#### Here are some sample sentences using the simple future tense with various nuances:

1. *Andreea e convinsă că Masanobu **va primi** bursa de studii.*  
"Andreea is convinced that Masanobu will receive the scholarship."

2. **Voi face** tot ce e posibil ca să rezolv această situație.  
"I will do my best to solve this situation."
3. Ne **veți putea** aștepta, dacă întârziem puțin?  
"Can you wait for us if we are a little late?"

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Mai întâi îți voi arăta centrul orașului, apoi vom merge la mare.*  
"First I will show you the center of the city, then we will go to the seaside."
2. *În a 3-a (treia) și a 4-a (patra) zi vom merge să vedem florile de cireș sakura.*  
"On the 3rd and 4th day, we will go to see the sakura cherry blossoms."
3. *Sper că va fi o excursie plăcută pentru tine.*  
"I hope it will be a great trip for you."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Voi merge pentru trei zile în orașul natal.*  
"I will go for three days to my hometown."
2. *Dacă nu plecăm acum, va fi prea târziu.*  
"If we do not go now, it will be too late."
3. *Ei vor fi mâine în tren cu tine.*  
"They will be in the train with you tomorrow."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Traveling abroad from Romania

---

After the Revolution against the communists in 1989, Romanians have discovered the joy of traveling and since then, the numbers of people that go abroad has increased considerably. Romanians travel at least once a year, usually during their holiday from work. Some of the most popular travel destinations are: Bulgaria, Italy, Greece, Turkey, Hungary, Austria, UK, Germany and France. Interestingly enough, there has been an increased interest in city-breaks, especially by corporate Romanians. This is also due to the affordable fares that low-cost airline companies provide for Romania. With the current expansion of the corporate sector in Romania, travelling on business for Romanians has increased too, giving them the

chance to visit countries like: Germany, Italy, Hungary, the Nordic Countries and even the U.S. or Canada. Some companies choose to send Romanian entry-levels to their headquarter company abroad in order to undergo training sessions. Additionally, the current trend of freelancing and working remotely has convinced many Romanians to travel to the most exotic corners of the world and work from there. There are also a great number of Romanians that have chosen to live abroad. The Romanian Diaspora has reached a number of 3.4 million Romanian residents all over the world. Some of the most popular countries that they've chosen as a residency are: Italy, France, Spain, the United Kingdom, both South and North America, Germany and Canada. But don't be surprised if you encounter Romanians even at the furthest regions of the globe.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Călătorie plăcută!*  
"Have a nice trip!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #14

# Talking About Your Relationship Status in Romanian

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# **14**

## ROMANIAN

1. Mihai: Tu ai prietenă?
2. Masanobu: Da, am. De ce?
3. Mihai: Doar de curiozitate. De când sunteți împreună?
4. Masanobu: De 2 (doi) ani. Tū?
5. Mihai: Eu nu am, dar în ultima vreme îmi doresc să am una.
6. Masanobu: Și ce gen de fete îți plac?
7. Mihai: Nu am un gen anume, dar vreau să avem hobby-uri comune.
8. Masanobu: Foarte bine. Sigur vei găsi.

## ENGLISH

1. Mihai: Do you have a girlfriend?
2. Masanobu: Yes, I do. Why?
3. Mihai: Just out of curiosity. For how long have you been together?
4. Masanobu: For 2 years. You?
5. Mihai: I don't have one, but lately I wish I did.
6. Masanobu: And what type of girls do you like?

CONT'D OVER

7. Mihai: I don't have a certain type, but I want us to have common hobbies.
8. Masanobu: Very well. I'm sure you'll find one.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
prietenă	girlfriend	noun
de	of, for	conjunction
în ultima vreme	lately	adverb
sigur	sure, surely	adverb
a găsi	find	verb
curiozitate	curiosity	noun
de când	since	adverb
ultim	ultimate	adjective
gen	type	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Prietena mea vrea să mergem la festivalul acela.</b></p> <p>"My girlfriend wants us to go to that festival."</p>	<p><b>De ziua lui ne dă de băut.</b></p> <p>"On his birthday, he is offering us drinks."</p>
<p><b>De băut.</b></p> <p>"To drink."</p>	<p><b>În ultima vreme bebelușul meu nu a prea dormit.</b></p> <p>"My baby hasn't been able to sleep well lately."</p>

<p><b>Sigur mergem mâine împreună pe munte.</b></p> <p>"We are surely going tomorrow on the mountains."</p>	<p><b>Ești sigur?</b></p> <p>Are you sure?</p>
<p><b>Am găsit biletul de metrou.</b></p> <p>"I found the subway ticket."</p>	<p><b>Curiozitatea este una dintre trăsăturile mele principale.</b></p> <p>"Curiosity is one of my main traits."</p>
<p><b>De când ești plecat la studii în Japonia?</b></p> <p>"Since when did you go to study in Japan?"</p>	<p><b>Am ales ultimul produs din listă.</b></p> <p>"I chose the last item in the list."</p>
<p><b>Ce genuri de film îți plac?</b></p> <p>"What types of movies do you like?"</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **de curiozitate** "out of curiosity"

It is a compound adverb of modality formed from the preposition **de** "of" and the feminine noun in the singular form **curiozitate** "curiosity." It literally means "of curiosity."

It's used to express the reason behind an action; specifically, of being curious about an action.

#### **For example:**

1. *De curiozitate, cât este ceasul acum?*  
"Out of curiosity, what time is it now?"

### **în ultima vreme** "lately"

---

It is a compound adverb of place, made out of the preposition **în** "in," the feminine singular form of the **ultim** "last" adjective, and the feminine noun **vreme** "time" in its singular form. It literally means "in the last time."

It is used to delimit a specific period of time, specifically one that is close to the moment of speaking.

It can be replaced by the similar structure *în ultimul timp*, having the same meaning-"lately."

**For example:**

1. *În ultima vreme adorm mai greu.*  
"Lately, I have difficulties falling asleep."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Adverbs of Time

***De când sunteți împreună?***  
"For how long have you been together?"

***De doi ani.***  
"For two years."

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use compound adverbs to express time, such as "since when" and "for how long"
2. use "and" to naturally connect sentences in conversation
3. use other frequently used adverbs of time

---

**1. How to use compound adverbs to express time, such as "since when" and "for how long"**

---

In Romanian, adverbs are inflexible parts of the speech, usually accompanying verbs but also other adverbs or adjectives.

The adverbs of time can be either simple (a single element)-for example, *acum* "now"-compound (multiple elements structure)-e.g. *de curând* "recently"-or formed from adverbial structures (*locuțiuni adverbiale*).

### Compound adverbs structure chart

Compound adverbs of time - structural elements	Example of compound adverbs
preposition + adverb	<i>din</i> "from" + <i>înapoi</i> "backward": <i>dinapoi</i> "rearward"
preposition + noun	<i>de</i> "of" + <i>seară</i> "evening": <i>deseară</i> "tonight"
<i>ori-</i> + adverb	<i>oricând</i> "anytime"
adverb + <i>-va</i>	<i>cândva</i> "sometime"
pronominal adjective + adverb	<i>alaltă</i> "the other" + <i>ieri</i> "yesterday": <i>alaltăieri</i> "the day before yesterday"
pronominal adjective + noun	<i>altă</i> "other" + <i>dată</i> "date": <i>altădată</i> "another time"
adverb + noun	<i>azi</i> "today" + <i>noapte</i> "night": <i>azi-noapte</i> "last night"
preposition + noun	<i>după</i> "after" + <i>masă</i> "dinner": <i>după-masă</i> "afternoon"

Adverbial structures also involve forming adverbs by using adverbs and other grammatical parts but without joining the words (e.g. *zi de zi* "daily").

### Adverbial structures chart

Adverbial structures - components	Example of adverbial structures
preposition + noun	<i>la fel de</i> "as, equally"
preposition + pronoun	<i>cu totul</i> "entirely"
preposition + adjective	<i>din nou</i> "again"
preposition + adverb	<i>de asemenea</i> "also"
pronoun + +verb + adverb	<i>cine știe când</i> "who knows when"

adjective + preposition	<i>extrem de</i> "extremely"
adverb + adverb / (+ preposition)	<i>tot atât de</i> "just as"
repeated words	<i>an de an</i> "every year"
rhymed words	<i>talmeș-balmeș</i> "hotchpotch"

**De când** "since when" and **pentru cât timp** "for how long" are interrogative adverbial structures. So, these can be found mostly in interrogative sentences (e.g. *De când îți plac ție cireșele?* "Since when do you like cherries?")

### Here are some sample sentences using compound adverbs of time

1. *Mergem de Crăciun acasă **an de an**.*  
"We go home for Christmas every year."
2. **Pentru cât timp** *vei rămâne în Japonia la studii?*  
"For how long will you stay in Japan to study?"
3. *A fost multă gălăgie în fața casei **azi-noapte**.*  
"There was a lot of noise in front of the house last night."

## 2. How to use "and" to naturally connect sentences in conversation

*Și* is a simple conjunction, with a copulative function. A conjunction is an inflexible part of the speech that connects two syntactic units (words or sentences) in a relation of coordination or subordination.

When connecting two sentences of similar type, *și* is indicating an addition to the previous sentence or a new statement (e.g. *El intră în cameră și închide ușa.* "He enters the room and closes the door.")

In particular cases, *și* can also function as an adverb of modality that helps reinforcing and highlighting the word that follows (e.g. *Au venit și ei să ne susțină la meci.* "They also came to support us during the game.")

### Here are some sample sentences of using *și* as a conjunction between sentences

1. *Am fost la mare **și** apoi am mers la munte.*  
"We went to the sea and then we went to the mountains."

2. *Nu am mai ajuns la Bogdan **și** nu am mai putut face rost de mingea de fotbal.*  
"I did not go to Bogdan's house, so I could not get the soccer ball from him."
3. *Vii la mine **și** îmi spui că s-a terminat?*  
"Are you coming to me and telling me it is over?"

### 3. How to use other frequently used adverbs of time

---

Here are some of the most frequently used adverbs of time in Romanian:

1. *acum / acuma* "now," *atunci* "then," *niciodată* "never"
2. *azi / astăzi* "today," *ieri* "yesterday," *ieri-seară* "yesterday evening," *alaltăieri* "the day before yesterday," *azi-noapte* "last night"
3. *mâine* "tomorrow," *poimâine* "the day after tomorrow," *mâineseară* "tomorrow night," *deseară* "tonight"
4. *când* "when," *de când* "since," *atunci când* "when," *cândva* "sometimes," *din când în când* "from time to time"
5. *demult* "long time ago," *devreme* "early," *oricând* "anytime," *cândva* "sometime," *nicicând*
6. *zi de zi* "daily," *an de an* "every year"
7. *altădată* "another time," *după-amiază* or *după-masă* "afternoon"

### Here are some sentences using common adverbs of time

1. *Ce poți face **astăzi**, nu lăsa pe **mâine**!* (Romanian proverb)  
"What you can do today, do not postpone for tomorrow!"
2. ***Astă-seară** vom merge împreună la cinema.*  
"Tonight we will go together to the cinema."
3. ***Niciodată** nu ne-am simțit așa de bine!*  
"We never felt so good!"

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Doar de curiozitate. De când sunteți împreună?*  
"Just out of curiosity. For how long have you been together?"
2. *De 2 (doi) ani. Tu?*  
"For 2 years. You?"
3. *Eu nu am, dar în ultima vreme îmi doresc să am una.*  
"I don't have, but lately I wish to have one."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Mâine luăm biletele de avion.*  
"Tomorrow we will buy the airplane tickets."
2. *De mult timp visez la această excursie.*  
"I have been dreaming about this trip for a long time."
3. *E prea târziu să mai mergem la piață acum.*  
"It is too late to go to the market now."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Privacy in Romania

---

Romanians are friendly, open, kind, and welcoming, especially when it comes to foreigners because they are interested in discovering new cultures and ways of living. However, when it comes to aspects that are more personal to them, Romanians are formal and reserved until a certain level of trust has been built. From my experience, this happens in time, with patience and effort put in by both sides, just like any other type of relationship. Gradually, Romanians will open up and discuss their personal matters when they consider you a friend, rather than an acquaintance. Due to the fact that Romanian society is network-based, you can enter a group of Romanian friends just by knowing one or two members of the group. When it comes to asking a Romanian about his personal life, you should know that they don't appreciate if it happens in a business context because they do not like to mix their personal and professional life at all. A Romanian will gladly answer your questions in a more relaxed environment, such as over lunch or dinner, or while going out for a glass of wine or a couple of beers. On the other hand, Romanians ask personal questions easily, because they are interested about foreigners, their lives outside Romania, and how they make a living. There are certain social taboos that you should be aware of when talking about Romanians. A very important one is to not associate them with negative stereotypes.

## Useful expression:

1. *Șșt, să nu ne audă vecinii!*  
"Ssh, do not let our neighbors hear us!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #15

# Do You Like Your Romanian Neighborhood?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# **15**

## ROMANIAN

1. Andreea: Ce îmi place cartierul acesta!
2. Masanobu: Da? Ce îți place la el?
3. Andreea: Are bibliotecă, supermarket, poștă, un parc și stație de metrou.
4. Masanobu: Ah, înseamnă că este foarte convenabil.
5. Andreea: Da, este convenabil, dar este și foarte liniștit. Noaptea nu este gălăgie.
6. Masanobu: Cu ce mergi în centru de obicei?
7. Andreea: Iau autobuzul și apoi metroul și durează doar douăzeci de minute.
8. Masanobu: Ce norocoasă ești!

## ENGLISH

1. Andreea: I like this neighborhood so much!
2. Masanobu: You do? What do you like about it?
3. Andreea: It has a library, a supermarket, a post office, a park and a subway station.
4. Masanobu: Oh, that means it's very convenient.
5. Andreea: Yes, it's convenient, but also very quiet. There's no noise during the night.

CONT'D OVER

6. Masanobu: What do you usually ride to go downtown?
7. Andreea: I take the bus and then the subway and it only takes 20 minutes.
8. Masanobu: You're so lucky!

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
cartier	neighborhood	noun
biblioteca	library	noun
poștă	post	noun
stație	station	noun
metrou	subway	noun
norocos	lucky	adjective
plăcea	like	verb
gălăgie	noise	noun
dura	take	verb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Locuiesc într-un cartier foarte central.</b></p> <p>"I live in a very central neighborhood."</p>	<p><b>Când eram student, petreceam multe ore în bibliotecă.</b></p> <p>"When I was a student, I spent many hours in the library."</p>
<p><b>În zilele noastre mergi foarte rar la poștă.</b></p> <p>"Nowadays, we rarely go to the post office."</p>	<p><b>Nu găsesc stația de tren.</b></p> <p>"I can't find the train station."</p>

<p><b>Mă scuzați, aceasta este stația de metrou?</b></p> <p>"Excuse me, is this the subway station?"</p>	<p><b>Mă simt norocos să te am în viața mea.</b></p> <p>"I feel lucky to have you in my life."</p>
<p><b>Ne place să mergem la concerte rock împreună.</b></p> <p>"We like going to rock concerts together."</p>	<p><b>Este multă gălăgie datorită grădiniței din cartier.</b></p> <p>"There is a lot of noise because of the neighborhood kindergarten."</p>
<p><b>Această întâlnire durează în mod normal trei ore.</b></p> <p>"This meeting normally takes three hours."</p>	<p><b>Cât durează să ajungem până la Brașov?</b></p> <p>"How long does it take to get to Brașov?"</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **Ce îți place la...?**

#### **"What do you like about...?"**

It is an interrogative structure made out of the invariable pronoun **ce** "what," the personal pronoun in the dative case for the second person singular number, **îți** "you," the simple present tense for the verb **a place** "to like," and the preposition **la** "to." It literally means "what you like to."

The structure is used to introduce an interrogation about the interlocutor's reasons of liking something specific (the element coming next to the *la* "to" preposition, in the sentence). According to the person and number of the interlocutor (or the subject that the action of liking is referring to), the personal pronoun varies - *îmi* "me," *îți* "you," *îi* "he/she," *ne* "we," *vă* "you," *le* "they" (e.g. *Ce le place la...?* "What do they like about...?").

#### **For example:**

1. *Ce îți place la Andreea atât de mult?*  
"What do you like about Andreea so much?"

### **Ce norocos** **"So lucky"**

It is an exclamatory expression formed from the invariable pronoun **ce** "what" and the masculine singular form of the adjective **norocos** "lucky." It literally means "what lucky!"

It is used when the speaker wants to express its exclamation regarding someone's luck in a certain situation (which was previously exposed in the conversation or is introduced next in the sentence). The expression adapts to the gender and number of the subject that is considered as being "lucky"-*norocos, norocoasă, norocoși, norocoase* (in English "lucky" as adjective is invariable).

### For example:

1. *Ce norocos am fost să prind trenul acum!*  
"How lucky I was to catch the train now!"

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Using Adjectives to Describe Places

***Da, este convenabil, dar este și foarte liniștit. Noaptea nu este gălăgie.***  
"Yes, it's convenient, but also very quiet. There's no noise during the night."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use *convenabil* - "convenient"
2. use *liniștit* - "quiet"
3. use other adjectives to describe places

---

### 1. How to use *convenabil* - "convenient"

*Convenabil* "convenient" is a simple form adjective expressing an abstract attribute of a noun.

As a meaning in the sentences, *convenabil* refers to the quality of a specific noun that is considered to meet specific requests, that is satisfactory or favorable.

When preceded by the structure *în mod*, *convenabil* can be used an adverb of modality (e.g. *I-a vorbit în mod convenabil și s-au înțeles.* "He spoke to him conveniently and they reached consensus.")

*convenabil* "convenient" ≠ *inconvenabil* "inconvenient," *neconvenabil* "inconvenient"

It has a flexible form according with the noun it accompanies:

Feminine		Masculine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>convenabilă</i> "convenient"	<i>convenabile</i> "convenient"	<i>convenabil</i> "convenient"	<i>convenabili</i> "convenient"

Here are some sample sentences using the adjective *convenabil*

1. *Mi s-a părut un preț **convenabil** pentru acest televizor.*  
"It seemed to me a convenient price for this TV set."
2. *Aceste bluze sunt **convenabile** pentru că le poți purta în orice anotimp.*  
"These blouses are convenient because you can wear them in any season."
3. *Aceasta este piscina publică cea mai **convenabilă** din oraș.*  
"This is the most convenient public swimming pool in the city."

## 2. How to use *liniștit* - "quiet"

*Liniștit* "quiet" is a an adjective originating from the participle of the verb *a (se) liniști* "to reassure / to be quiet."

As an adjective, *liniștit* can have multiple meanings when accompanying a noun in a sentence. These are the most common ones:

- A place where there is no noise or agitation. (e.g. *Acesta este un loc foarte **liniștit**.* "This is a very quiet place.")
- To be calm as a temperamental attribute (e.g. *Vecinii noștri sunt oameni foarte **liniștiți**, mereu senini.* "Our neighbors are very quiet people, always serene.")
- Encouraging someone or ensuring about receiving one's apologies (e.g. *Fii / Stai **liniștit!*** \* "Relax!" \* Although, the same sentence can be translated as "Be quiet! or Keep still!", according to the context of the speech)

*Liniștit* can also be used as an adverb of modality in a sentence, referring to the quality of a specific action (e.g. *El merge **liniștit** spre gara de Nord.* "He goes quietly to the North Station.")

1. *liniștit* "calm" ≠ *nervos* "nervous",
2. *liniștit* "calm" ≠ *enervat* "annoyed"

3. *liniștit* "quiet" ≠ *zgomotos* "noisy"

It has a flexible form according with the noun it accompanies:

Feminine		Masculine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>liniștită</i> "quiet / calm"	<i>liniștite</i> "quiet / calm"	<i>liniștit</i> "quiet / calm"	<i>liniștiți</i> "quiet / calm"

Here are some sample sentences using the adjective *liniștit* "quiet"

1. *Am ales să mă mut într-un cartier mai liniștit.*  
"I chose to move to a quieter neighborhood."
2. *Îmi place să vin aici pentru că e un loc foarte liniștit.*  
"I love to come here because it is a very quiet place."
3. *Îi place să meargă în restaurante liniștite să savureze un pahar de vin.*  
"He likes to go to quiet restaurants to enjoy a glass of wine."

### 3. How to use other adjectives to describe places

Adjectives describing places can either refer to concrete (e.g. *o clădire înaltă, roșie.* "a tall red building...") or abstract (e.g. *un cartier convenabil* "a convenient neighborhood") attributes of a particular place.

As an adjective, it usually occurs after the noun it accompanies (e.g. *restaurantul albastru* "the blue restaurant"). Although, there are situations when the adjective and the noun can switch places in order to emphasize a particular aspect in the sentence (e.g. *Frumos loc a găsit Mihai!* "Mihai found a nice place!")

Usually, common adjectives describing places are flexible according to the noun's case, gender and number (e.g. *ușa clădirii albastre* "the door of the blue building" - genitive case, feminine singular noun).

Below are listed some of the most common adjective describing places:

1. Simple adjectives: *mic* "small" / *mare* "big," *înalt* "tall" / *scund/jos* "short/low," *lung* "long" / *scurt* "short," *lat* "wide" / *îngust* "narrow," *colorat* "colorful" (and all existing colors\*\*), *nou* "new" / *vechi* "old," *frumos* "beautiful" / *urât* "ugly"

2. Compound adjectives: e.g. *alb-gălbui* "cream-colored"
3. Derived with prefixes or suffixes: e.g. *grotesc* "grotesque"
4. Originating from other parts of the speech (e.g. verbs, adverbs): *îndepărtat* "far," *liniștit* "quiet," *ordonat* "tidy"

\*\* There are some colors that are inflexible to case, gender or number (they have only one termination for any form of the noun. These are *bej* "beige," *roz* "pink," *mov* "purple," *gri* "gray," *bordo* "burgundy," *maro* "brown."

### Here are three sample sentences using common adjectives describing places

1. *Am ajuns într-un cartier cu clădiri **vechi frumoase**.*  
"We have come to a neighborhood with beautiful old buildings."
2. *Mi-am cumpărat multe ghivece **mov** pentru florile din casă.*  
"I bought many purple pots for the flowers in the house."
3. *Vecinul meu Mihai și-a construit un garaj foarte **grotesc**.*  
"My neighbor Mihai built himself a very grotesque garage."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Ah, înseamnă că este foarte convenabil.*  
"Oh, that means it's very convenient."
2. *Da, este convenabil, dar este și foarte liniștit. Noaptea nu este gălăgie.*  
"Yes, it's convenient, but also very quiet. There's no noise during the night."
3. *Ce norocoasă ești!*  
"You're so lucky!"

### Sample Sentences:

- 
1. *Am găsit un loc foarte frumos pentru picnicul nostru.*  
"We found a very nice place for our picnic."
  2. *Ei au un apartament spațios.*  
"They have a spacious apartment."
  3. *La țară bunicii mei au o grădină mare și plină de verdeață.*  
"In the countryside, my grandparents have a large garden full of greenery."

# CULTURAL INSIGHT

## What is considered convenient in Romanian cities?

---

Many foreigners have come to Romania to visit the country and fell in love with the cities, the scenery, the culture and the way of living that the next natural step was to move and start a life here. There are many popular Romanian cities among expats, such as: Cluj-Napoca, Brasov, Timisoara, Iasi and Bucharest. Also, this is the case for many Romanian students that came here to study and stayed. People choose these places because they have spectacular opportunities in terms of traveling, hiking, cultural activities, nightlife, business contexts and so on. So, what do you need to know if you decide to move to a Romanian city? First of all, transportation is one major factor to take into consideration. Sadly, the Romanian infrastructure for vehicles still needs many improvements, so it's better to choose a residency that is closer either to your future workplace or a local public transport station (like a Subway station in Bucharest or a bus station in any other city). A piece of advice here is to consider a place within a reasonable walking distance as well, because the prices tend to be higher as you get closer to a public transportation station. Furthermore, foreigners that have chosen to live in Romanian cities, choose them for touristic and traveling purposes as well. So, living in Brasov or Cluj-Napoca brings you closer to the mountains, the hills, the countryside and all the natural beauties that the country has to offer. Living in Bucharest puts you equidistant between the mountain resorts and the sea side, so that's an advantage too. Another factor that is worth mentioning here is that you should consider moving to a neighborhood that has a supermarket or a hypermarket close by in order to do your shopping. This is most commonly done by foreigners and locals alike, because they want to have a place that they can depend on when it comes to food and supplies. Also, Romania is a country where 24/7 shops are present in almost every neighborhood of a big city, so you can depend on that as well.

### Useful expression:

1. *viață de oraș*  
"city life"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #16

# Following Romanian Instructions

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# **16**

## ROMANIAN

1. Responsabil: Pentru a deschide ușa, trageți de levierul negru din dreapta.
2. Responsabil: Nu curățați scaunele cu materiale abrazive.
3. Responsabil: Pentru a deschide capota, apăsați pe butonul albastru din stânga.
4. Responsabil: Apoi ridicați capota cu mâna sau cu ce doriți.
5. Responsabil: În caz de urgență, sunați la acest număr de telefon.
6. Responsabil: Pentru întrebări, scrieți firmei la adresa de e-mail de mai jos.
7. Responsabil: Nu conduceți vehiculul sub influența alcoolului.
8. Responsabil: Purtați întotdeauna centura de siguranță.

## ENGLISH

1. Person in charge: In order to open the door, pull the black handle from the right side.
2. Person in charge: Do not clean the chairs with abrasive substances.
3. Person in charge: In order to open the hood, press the blue button on the left.
4. Person in charge: Then lift the hood with your hands or with whatever you want.
5. Person in charge: In case of emergency, call this phone number.

CONT'D OVER

6. Person in charge: For questions, write to the company at the e-mail address below.
7. Person in charge: Don't drive the vehicle under the influence of alcohol.
8. Person in charge: Always wear your seatbelt.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
pentru	for	preposition
a deschide	open	verb
a trage	pull	verb
scaun	chair	noun
a ridica	lift up	verb
apăsa	press	verb
levier	handle	noun
capotă	hood	noun
centură	belt	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Pentru puțin.</b> "For nothing."</p>	<p><b>Dechide, te rog, geamurile.</b> "Please open the windows."</p>
<p><b>Poți trage de ștecherul încărcătorului meu?</b> "Can you pull the plug of my charger?"</p>	<p><b>Acestea sunt scaunele mele.</b> "Those are my chairs."</p>

<p><b>I-a fost greu să ridice plasele de cumpărături ale mamei.</b></p> <p>"He found it difficult to lift his mother's shopping bags."</p>	<p><b>Am apăsat pe butonul mașinii dar aceasta nu a pornit.</b></p> <p>"I pressed the button of the car, but it did not start."</p>
<p><b>Al cui este acest levier?</b></p> <p>"Whose handle is this?"</p>	<p><b>Sub capota mașinii sunt multe piese murdare.</b></p> <p>"Under the hood of the car, there are many dirty parts."</p>
<p><b>Centura copilului nu era pusă corect.</b></p> <p>"The child's belt was not correctly placed."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***pentru a*** "in order to"

It is a structure made out of the preposition ***pentru*** "for" and the preposition ***a*** "to" used in forming the infinitive form of a verb. It literally means "for to."

It is usually used in expressing necessary conditions to perform a certain action. It can be included in more formal instructions or indications regarding a way of doing something specific, such as technical requirements. A more informal alternative for this is the structure *ca să* "as to / in order to."

#### **For example:**

1. *Pentru a răspunde cerințelor lui a trebuit să ne schimbăm planul.*  
"In order to respond to his requests we had to change our plan."

### ***în caz de*** "in case of"

It is an adverbial structure made out of the ***în*** "in" preposition, the neuter noun ***caz*** "case" in its singular form, and the preposition ***de*** "of." It literally means "in case of."

It is used to introduce a specific situation or condition requiring a certain type of reaction.

#### **For example:**

1. *Trebuie să schimbați actele în caz de divorț.*  
"You must replace your documents in case of divorce."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is the Genitive and Dative Cases

***Nu conduceți vehiculul sub influența alcoolului.***  
"Don't drive the vehicle under the influence of alcohol."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. recognize and use examples of the genitive and dative cases
2. differentiate between genitive and dative cases

---

#### 1. How to recognize and use examples of the genitive and dative cases

---

A case represents the relation between a noun and the other grammatical parts of the sentence related to the action expressed by the verb.

The **Genitive case** expresses **possession** and responds to the question **a/al/ale/ai cui?** "whose?" (e.g. *Unde este mașina mamei?* "Where is my mother's car?")

These are some of the most common situations of how the genitive case is expressed in a sentence:

- Genitival article (possessive) - **al meu** "my" (it is the genitive of the pronoun *cine* "who"). It expresses possession and it is pre-posed to the noun, having a form for each number and gender (see table below), e.g. *Mașina este a vecinului.* "It is the car of my neighbor.", **A cui mașină este aceasta?** "Whose care is this?"

---

Masculine		Feminine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>al</b> (cui) "of / whose"	<b>ai</b> (cui) "of / whose"	<b>a</b> (cui) "of / whose"	<b>ale</b> (cui) "of / whose"

---

- Being required by the use of an articulated preposition or adverbial structure such as **înaintea** "in front of," **în fața** "in front of," **dedesubtul** "underneath of," **în spatele** "behind of" or **din cauza** "because of" (e.g. *înaintea mașinii* "in front of the car").

The **Dative case** expresses **destination** and comes as a reply to the question **cui?** "to whom?" (e.g. *Îi dau mașina mea mamei...* "I give my mother my...")

The nouns in dative are easy to be recognized by their specific articulated termination:

Masculine		Feminine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>-ui</b> (e.g. <i>șoferului</i> "(to the) driver")	<b>-ilor</b> (e.g. <i>șoferilor</i> , "(to the) drivers")	<b>-ei/-ii</b> (e.g. <i>surorii</i> "(to the) sister")	<b>-elor/-ilor</b> (e.g. <i>surorilor</i> , "(to the) sisters")

These are some of the most common situations of how the dative case is expressed in a sentence:

1. As an indirect complement expressed by a noun (e.g. *Dă mâncare câinelui.* "He gives food to the dog.")
2. A personal or reflexive pronoun replacing a possessive adjective (also called the possessive dative, e.g. *Unde mi-am parcat mașina?* "Where did I park my car?")
3. As a personal pronoun in a pronominal unipersonal and impersonal verb (e.g. *a-i plăcea* "to like," *a-i fi foame / milă / somn* "to be thirsty / merciful / sleepy")
4. As a reflexive pronoun\* in a pronominal reflexive verb (e.g. *a-și aminti* "to remember")

\* In Romanian, the reflexive pronouns in dative are identical with the personal pronouns in first and second person, but differ for the third person - *îmi* "to me," *îți* "to you," *iși* "to him/her," *ne* "to us," *vă* "to you," *își* "to them."

A particular situation is one in which the dative is built using the preposition *la* "to" (e.g. *Dă pomană la săraci.* "He gives food to the poor.")

## 2. How to differentiate between genitive and dative cases

The dative and the genitive can be easily confound. Here are some critical aspects to consider when differentiating between the two:

### Similarities

1. They both use personal pronouns (the accentuated forms), which have similar forms.

## Differences

1. The genitive expresses possession whilst the dative expresses destination.
2. The personal pronoun in genitive determines a noun while the one in dative determines a verb.

Here is a chart with similar structures in dative and genitive:

Genitive (whose?)	Dative (to/ whom?)
<i>A găsit piesa <b>mașinii</b>.</i> "He found the piece of the car."	<i>Piesa găsită este <b>a mașinii</b>.</i> "The piece found is of the car."
<i>Este ziua <b>lui</b>.</i> "It is his birthday."	<i>Ziua asta este <b>a lui</b>.</i> "This is his birthday."
<i>Aceștia sunt banii <b>lor</b>.</i> "These are their money."	<i>Banii sunt <b>ai lor</b>.</i> "The money are theirs."
<i>Unde este casa <b>Mariei</b>?</i> "Where is Maria's house?"	<i>Îi deschid <b>Mariei</b> ușa.</i> "I open the door to Maria."
<i>Ei au acționat împotriva <b>legii</b>.</i> "They acted against the law."	<i>Acest fapt se supune <b>legii</b>.</i> "This act is under the law."
<i>Mergem la munte cu mașina <b>mamei</b>.</i> "We go to the mountain with mom's car."	<i><b>Mamei</b> îi place să meargă la munte.</i> "Mom loves going into the mountains."
<i>Întrebările <b>lor</b> sunt foarte dificile.</i> "Their questions are very difficult."	<i>Le răspunde <b>lor</b> la întrebări întâi.</i> "He answers them to the questions first."
<i>Hainele din mijlocul <b>camerei</b> sunt curate.</i> "The clothes in the middle of the room are clean."	<i><b>Camerei</b> mele îi stă mai bine curată.</i> "My room looks better while clean."

Here are some more sample sentences using genitive and dative

1. *Îi răspunde **Andreei** la întrebarea **lui Mihai**.* (dative, genitive)  
"He replies to Mihai's question to Andreea."
2. ***Lor** le place mai mult marea decât muntele.* (dative)  
"They enjoy the sea more than the mountain."

3. *El este fratele **Mariei**.* (genitive)  
"He is Maria's brother."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Pentru întrebări, scrieți firmei la adresa de e-mail de mai jos.*  
"For questions, write to the company at the e-mail address below."
2. *Nu conduceți vehiculul sub influența alcoolului.*  
"Don't drive the vehicle under the influence of alcohol."
3. *În caz de urgență, sunați la acest număr de telefon.*  
"In case of emergency, call this phone number."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *I-a dat sfaturi copilului.*  
"She gave advices to the child."
2. *Surorile mamei sunt cu mine.*  
"Mom's sister are with me."
3. *Unde este rochia de seară a Andreei?*  
"Where is Andreea's evening dress?"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Cars in Romania

---

The car industry in Romania has experienced an ascending trend in the past decade with a huge impact on the country's economy and international business. The automotive market has developed at such an incredible rate as it covers more than a quarter of the total exports made by Romania. It is a highly developed industry, following the latest global trends; it is also responsible for modernizing other fields of activity and has created a great number of job opportunities for the local communities as well. At the moment, there are more than 450 companies that operate in the Romanian car making industry, with Dacia Renault and Ford as the biggest players on the market. Furthermore, companies that are making car parts (Continental, Draxlmaier, Pierelli, etc.) have also developed really well in the local Romanian communities. Cars are considered the most convenient way of transportation among Romanians, confirmed by a total of 5 million vehicles that are currently registered for circulation. A notable aspect here is that more than half

of these vehicles are second-hand ones, because Romanians have found it to be more convenient for them this way. Some visible consequences of this increase in vehicles consists of pollution, overcrowding, eliminating social spaces to create parking lots and so on. When talking about car models that Romanians choose, Dacia (the Romanian local brand) is still one of their popular choices. The other preferred car brands that follow are: Volkswagen and Skoda, Ford, Renault, and Toyota, usually selected for their spacious designs, room for the entire family or large trunks. Of course, sports cars (like BMW or Audi) are popular among more wealthy Romanians and there is also a preference for large cars such as Mercedes or Jeeps.

**Useful expression:**

1. *O mașină nou-nouță.*  
"A brand new car."

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #17

# Why Isn't Your Romanian TV Working?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# **17**

## ROMANIAN

1. Vânzătoare: Bună ziua, cu ce vă pot ajuta?
2. Mihai: Am o problemă. Am cumpărat acest televizor de aici, dar imaginea este neclară.
3. Vânzătoare: Aveți antenă?
4. Mihai: Nu, este 2017. Puteți să îl reparați?
5. Vânzătoare: Ați încercat să reglați antena?
6. Mihai: V-am spus că nu am antenă.
7. Vânzătoare: Înțeleg... atunci vom trimite un inginer să îl verifice.
8. Mihai: Mulțumesc. Voi aștepta.

## ENGLISH

1. Salesperson: Hello, how can I help you?
2. Mihai: I have a problem. I bought this TV set from here, but the image is blurry.
3. Salesperson: Do you have an antenna?
4. Mihai: No, it's 2017. Can you fix it?
5. Salesperson: Have you tried adjusting the antenna?
6. Mihai: I told you I don't have an antenna.

CONT'D OVER

7. Salesperson: I see... Then we'll send an engineer to check it.
8. Mihai: Thank you. I will wait.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
problemă	problem	noun
televizor	television	noun
imagine	image	noun
antena	antenna	noun
a repara	repair	verb
atunci	then	adverb
inginer	engineer	noun
a aștepta	wait	verb
neclar	hazy	adjective

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Am avut multe probleme cu această firmă.</b></p> <p>"I had a lot of problems with this company."</p>	<p><b>Te rog să închizi televizorul când vorbesc cu tine.</b></p> <p>"Please switch off the TV while I am talking to you."</p>
<p><b>Am văzut doar câteva imagini, nu mă pot decide.</b></p> <p>"I have seen only several images, I cannot decide."</p>	<p><b>Antenele acestea nu sunt bine reglate.</b></p> <p>"These antennas are not well tuned."</p>

<p><b>Îmi pot folosi garanția pentru repara acest ceas?</b></p> <p>"Can I use my warranty to repair this watch?"</p>	<p><b>OK, atunci ne vedem săptămâna viitoare.</b></p> <p>"Ok, then, I'll see you next week."</p>
<p><b>Am nevoie de un inginer priceput pentru această lucrare, vă rog.</b></p> <p>"I need a skilled engineer for this work, please."</p>	<p><b>Așteptați un minut vă rog.</b></p> <p>"Please, wait a minute."</p>

**Clauzele acestui contract sunt destul de neclare.**

"The terms of this contract are pretty unclear."

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***Am o problemă.***

**"I have a problem."**

It is a structure formed from the present tense form, first person on singular number, of the verb **a avea** "to have," the indefinite article **o** "one" of feminine gender in singular form, and the feminine noun of singular number **problemă** "problem." It literally means "(I) have a problem."

It is used to introduce a problematic situation of the speaker to his or her interlocutor.

It can be used as an independent sentence or also include details about the problematic situation (e.g. *Am o problemă cu aceste televizoare.* "I have a problem with this TV set.")

**For example:**

1. *Am o problemă cu cablul de internet.*  
"I have a problem with the internet cable."

***Atunci***

**"Then, / In that case,"**

It is an adverb used to express the consecutiveness of the verb it addresses. It is translated as "then" but with the meaning of "therefore, consequently."

It is used to express that a certain action happens as a consequence of another

action that was previously discussed in the conversation.

### For example:

1. *Atunci, veniți dumneavoastră la noi.*  
"Then, you come to us."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Expressions Used to Make Simple Complaints

***Am o problemă. Am cumpărat acest televizor de aici, dar imaginea este neclară.***

**"I have a problem. I bought this TV set from here, but the image is blurry."**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use *este inacceptabil să....* - "it's unacceptable to..."
2. politely ask to have an issue fixed
3. make a complaint with frequently used verbs

---

### 1. How to use *este inacceptabil să....* - "it's unacceptable to..."

---

*Inacceptabil* "unacceptable" is the antonym of the word *acceptabil* "acceptable." Therefore, the expression *este inacceptabil să....* "it's unacceptable to..." refers to the opinion of the speaker about something he or she considers should not be permitted or should be refused. The structure is only used in its third person singular, being usually followed by a verb in conjunctive. Present tense is most often used than simple past (*A fost inacceptabil să...* "It was unacceptable to...").

The expression is mostly used in making a complaint about a service or about the behavior of someone that interferes with your rights or principles.

In Romanian, appreciation about acceptability or unacceptability are usually made using one of this pair of words:

1. *bine* "well" ≠ *rău* "wrong"
2. *bun* "good" ≠ *rău* "bad"
3. *acceptabil* "acceptable" ≠ *inacceptabil* "unacceptable"

4. *a (nu) accepta* "to (not) accept" = *a (nu) admite* "to (not) admit"
5. *a fi acceptabil* "to be acceptable" = *a merge* "to work" = *a fi admisibil* "to be admissible"
6. *a refuza* "to refuse"
7. *a sta bine* "to be fine with / to be good at" ≠ *a sta rău / prost* "to not be fine with / to be bad at"
8. *(a sta) așa și așa* "to be so and so"

### Here are three sample sentences using this expression

1. ***Este inacceptabil să*** îmi aduceți supa rece.  
"It is unacceptable to bring me the soup cold."
2. ***A fost inacceptabil să*** mă jignească, așa că am reacționat și eu.  
"It was unacceptable to offend me, so I reacted."
3. ***Este inacceptabil să*** plătesc dublu pentru un serviciu care nici nu merge.  
"It is unacceptable to pay twice for a service that does not even work."

## 2. How to politely ask to have an issue fixed

Here are some important elements to consider when formulating a politely request in Romanian:

1. The introductory verb used for asking *a ruga* "to ask:" *Vă rog (frumos / respectuos) să...* "Please, ... / I am politely / respectfully asking you to..."
2. The personal pronouns of politeness (see the table below for all variants).

### Personal pronouns of politeness chart

Person	Masculine	Masculine	Feminine	Feminine
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<b>Second person</b>	<i>dumneata</i> (low degree of politeness)			
	<i>dumneavoastră</i> (very polite address)			

<b>Third person</b>	<i>dânsul / dumnealui</i> "him"	<i>dânșii / dumnealor</i> "them"	<i>dânsa / dumneaei</i> "her"	<i>dânsele / dumnealor</i> "them"
---------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

1. Verbs used to refer to fixing: *a repara* "to fix, to repair," *a rezolva/ a soluționa* "to solve," *a găsi o soluție* "to find a solution"
2. Other words used to refer to fixing an issue: *reparație* "repair," *problemă* "problem, issue," *situație* "situation," *dificultate* "difficulty," *nevoie* "need," *soluție / rezolvare* "solution," *urgență* "emergency," *intervenție* "intervention."

### 3. How to make a complaint with frequently used verbs

Making a complaint in Romanian involves mostly a formal written approach. Therefore, the following words could be of help:

1. Verbs about **presenting a complaint**: *a prezenta/face/depune o plângere* "to present/make/submit a complaint" | *împotriva* "against" + Genitive case | *la* to + Accusative case (e.g. *Am făcut o plângere la poliție.* "I submitted a complaint to the police.")
2. Expression **about the act of complaining**: *a se plânga de* "to complain about" + Accusative case (e.g. *S-au plâns de întârzierea autobuzului.* "They complained about the delay of the bus.")
3. **Declarative enunciations** (e.g. *Programul nu e respectat.* "The schedule is not respected.")

### The verb *a se plânga* "to complain" conjugation chart

<b>PERFECT COMPUS</b> <b>"SIMPLE PAST"</b>	<b>PREZENT</b> <b>"PRESENT SIMPLE"</b>	<b>VIITORUL LITERAR / SIMPLU</b> <b>"SIMPLE FUTURE"</b>
<i>eu m-am plâns</i> "I complained"	<i>eu mă plâng</i> "I complain"	<i>(eu) mă voi plânga</i> "I will be complaining"
<i>tu te-ai plâns</i> "you complained"	<i>tu te plângi</i> "you complain"	<i>(tu) te vei plânga</i> "you will be complaining"

<i>el/ea s-a plâns</i> "he/she/it complained"	<i>el/ea se plânge</i> "he/she/it complains"	<i>(el/ea) se va plânge</i> "he/she/it will be complaining"
<i>noi ne-am plâns</i> "we complained"	<i>noi ne plângem</i> "we complain"	<i>noi vom fi</i> "we will be complaining"
<i>voi v-ați plâns</i> "you complained"	<i>voi vă plângeți</i> "you complain"	<i>voi veți fi</i> "you will be complaining"
<i>ei s-au plâns</i> "they complained"	<i>ei se plâng</i> "they complain"	<i>ei vor fi</i> "they will be complaining"

### Here are some sample sentences expressing a complaint

1. **Ne plângem** de mult de faptul că nu merge căldura în apartament.  
"We complained for a long time about the fact that the heating system in our apartment does not work."
2. **Vă rog respectuos să** ne rezolvați cererea în cel mult 3 zile.  
"I ask you politely to solve our request in no more than 3 days."
3. **Este inacceptabil să** rămână așa!  
"It is unacceptable to keep it that way!"

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Am o problemă. Am cumpărat acest televizor de aici, dar imaginea este neclară.*  
"I have a problem. I bought this TV set from here, but the image is blurry."
2. *Nu, este 2017. Puteți să îl reparați?*  
"No, it's 2017. Can you fix it?"
3. *Mulțumesc. Voi aștepta.*  
"Thank you. I will wait."

### Sample Sentences:

1. *Mă puteți ajuta să repar acest prăjitor de pâine?*  
"Can you help me repair this toaster?"

2. *Nu am primit în prealabil această notificare din partea companiei dumneavoastră.*  
"I did not previously receive this notification on behalf of your company."
3. *Nu sunt de acord cu aceste clauze. Vreau să rezilies acest contract.*  
"I do not agree with these terms. I want to terminate this contract."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Science and technology in Romania

---

From a historical point of view, there are many Romanian scientists, inventors, mathematicians, researchers, astronauts, biochemists, doctors and engineers that have contributed to the world's progressive development. For example, in the flying industry, Traian Vuia was one of the first people to make an airplane run on its own power engine, Aurel Vlaicu created and flew early versions of the modern airplane, while Henri Coanda was the one to give birth to the Coanda effects of the fluidics. In the medical and biological industry, Victor Babes has labeled about 50 germs and Nicolae Paulescu was the one that discovered the properties of insulin. Other notable names are: Petrace Poenaru, the inventor of the first fountain pen in the world; Emil Racovita, the founder of bio-speleology; and Lazar Edeleanu, the first chemist to synthesize amphetamine. However, in modern times, the educated and talented people in Romania choose to go abroad and work in their fields with specialized professionals because the current social, political, and economic context of the country offers very little opportunities for them. This is a crucial loss for the country as there are many valuable experts (from fields like Computer Science, Engineering, Medicine and many others) that simply choose to follow their dreams abroad. At the moment, the Information Technology industry is the one that has over 100,000 IT specialists working for both Romanian and International companies. The main areas of interests here are software, equipment manufacturing, management services, and maintenance.

### Useful expression:

1. *Tehnologie ultimul răcnet*  
"Cutting-edge technology"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #18

## How Likely is Rain Today in Romania?

---

### CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# **18**

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: La știri se spune că mâine s-ar putea să plouă.
2. Andreea: Sau s-ar putea să fie însorit.
3. Masanobu: Cum așa?
4. Andreea: În România uneori prognozele sunt greșite.
5. Masanobu: Nu am știut! Dar acum suntem în Japonia.
6. Andreea: Da, așa este. Probabil că ai dreptate.
7. Masanobu: Să luăm umbrelele astăzi!
8. Andreea: Bine.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: They said on the news that tomorrow it might rain.
2. Andreea: Or it might be sunny.
3. Masanobu: How so?
4. Andreea: In Romania, forecasts are sometimes wrong.
5. Masanobu: I didn't know. But now we are in Japan.
6. Andreea: Yes, that's correct. I guess you're right.
7. Masanobu: Let's take the umbrellas today.

CONT'D OVER

8. Andreea: Fine.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a spune	say	verb
a ploua	rain	verb
însorit	sunny	adjective
cum	how	adverb
Așa este!	That's true!	expression
umbrelă	umbrella	noun
greșit	wrong	adjective
la știri	on the news	phrase
prognoză	forecast	noun
a avea dreptate	be right	phrase

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Mihai spune multe lucruri interesante.</b></p> <p>"Mihai says a lot of interesting things."</p>	<p><b>Plouă mereu în Londra?</b></p> <p>"Does it always rain in London?"</p>
<p><b>Eu merg deseori la picnic când e o zi însorită.</b></p> <p>"I often go on a picnic when there is a sunny day."</p>	<p><b>Eu merg deseori la picnic când e o zi însorită.</b></p> <p>"I often go on a picnic on a sunny day."</p>
<p><b>Cum te simți azi?</b></p> <p>"How are you today?"</p>	<p><b>Cum a fost mâncarea la restaurantul japonez?</b></p> <p>"How was the food at the Japanese restaurant?"</p>

<p><b>Cum scrii asta?</b> "How do you write this?"</p>	<p><b>Cum a fost ziua ta?</b> "How was your day?"</p>
<p><b>Cum te numești?</b> "What is your name?"</p>	<p><b>Cum sunt?</b> "How are they?"</p>
<p><b>Spune-mi cum să folosesc telecomanda.</b> "Tell me how to use the remote control."</p>	<p><b>Într-adevăr, așa este. Mihai merge în Japonia în septembrie.</b> "Indeed, that's right. Mihai is going to Japan in September."</p>
<p><b>Am fost să îmi cumpăr o umbrelă.</b> "I went to buy an umbrella."</p>	<p><b>Cred că am cântărit greșit zahărul pentru că nu îmi ajunge să fac prăjitura.</b> "I think I weighed wrong the sugar as I do not have enough to make the cake."</p>
<p><b>Îmi pare rău. Am făcut un calcul greșit.</b> "I am sorry. I made a wrong calculation."</p>	<p><b>La știri văd mereu multă violență.</b> "On the news, I always see a lot of violence."</p>
<p><b>Prognoza pe următorul an financiar nu arată prea bine.</b> "The forecast for the next financial year does not look so good."</p>	<p><b>A avut dreptate mama în privința lui Matei.</b> "Mother was right about Matei."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***Nu am știut.*** **"I didn't know."**

It is the verb **a ști** "to know" used in first person negative form simple past. It basically means "I did not know."

Here it is used to express the speaker's surprise about a fact that he or she had no

information or idea previously of the moment of speaking. An alternative expression, used to express even more surprise, is the one using the imperfect tense (nu știam "I did not know").

### For example:

1. *Nu am știut că veniți azi.*  
"I didn't know you were coming today."

### **A avea dreptate** "to be right"

It is an expression made from the verb **a avea** "to have" and the noun **dreptate** "righteousness." It literally can be translated as "to have righteousness" meaning "to be right."

It is used to refer to a situation when someone is right about something he said or did. In more formal situations, the plural second person is used instead of the first singular (*aveți dreptate* "you are right").

### For example:

1. *Mihai mereu se bucură când are dreptate.*  
"Mihai always enjoys himself when he is right."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Expressions of Various Levels of Certainty

***La știri se spune că mâine s-ar putea să plouă.***  
"They said over the news that tomorrow it might rain."

---

In this lesson, we will learn how to:

1. use ***S-ar putea (să)*** - "it might"
2. use ***Sigur*** - "surely"
3. use ***Probabil că...*** - "it's likely that..."

---

### 1. How to use ***S-ar putea (să)*** - "it might"

---

***S-ar putea (să)*** "it might" is an expression made from the impersonal verb (reflexive

form, conditional mood, third person singular form) *a se putea* "can" + verb in Infinitive or Conjunctive. It is usually used to express:

1. A **possibility** - more often - (e.g. *Azi s-ar putea să plouă.* "Today it might rain.") or
2. An **equivoque** (e.g. *S-a terminat? S-ar putea.* "Is it over? It might.")

### Most common forms of *s-ar putea să* "it might" chart

Form	Conditional present	Conditional perfect
<b>Affirmative</b>	<p><i>S-ar putea</i> "It might" + verb in Infinitive / Conjunctive            e.g. <b><i>S-ar putea să plece mâine.</i></b> "He might be leaving tomorrow." (Conj.)  <b><i>S-ar putea pleca de mâine.</i></b> "It might be possible to leave tomorrow." (Inf.)</p>	<p><i>S-ar fi putut</i> "It could have" + verb in Infinitive / Conjunctive            e.g. <b><i>S-ar fi putut să se plece ieri.</i></b> "It could have gone yesterday." (Conj.)  <b><i>S-ar fi putut întâmpla ceva nedorit.</i></b> "Something undesirable could have happened." (Inf.)</p>
<b>Negative</b>	<p><i>Nu s-ar putea</i> "This could not" + verb in Infinitive / Conjunctive            e.g. <b><i>Nu s-ar putea face asta.</i></b> "It could not be done." (Inf.)  <b><i>Nu s-ar putea să se plece de mâine.</i></b> "It would not be possible to leave tomorrow." (Conj.)</p>	<p><i>Nu s-ar fi putut</i> "It could have not" + verb in Infinitive / Conjunctive            e.g. <b><i>Nu s-ar fi putut face asta.</i></b> "It could have not been done." (Inf.)  <b><i>Nu s-ar fi putut să se plece de mâine.</i></b> "It could have not been possible to leave tomorrow." (Conj.)</p>

	<p><b>Affirmative</b>  <i>S-ar putea...</i> "Could this..." + verb in Infinitive + nominal group ?  e.g. <b>S-ar putea</b> <i>strânge suficienți bani?</i> "Could enough money be raised?"</p> <p><b>Negative*</b>  <i>Nu s-ar putea...</i> "Could this be..." + verb in Infinitive + nominal group ?  e.g. <b>Nu s-ar putea</b> <i>modifica asta?</i> "Could this be modified?"</p>	<p><b>Affirmative</b>  <i>S-ar fi putut...</i> "Could this have been..." + verb in Infinitive + nominal group ?  e.g. <b>S-ar fi putut</b> <i>strânge suficienți bani?</i> "Could enough money have been raised?"</p> <p><b>Negative*</b>  <i>Nu s-ar fi putut...</i> "Could this have been..." + verb in Infinitive + nominal group ?  e.g. <b>Nu s-ar fi putut</b> <i>modifica asta?</i> "Could this have been modified?"</p>
<b>Interrogative</b>		

\*the conditional negative form of the verb in interrogative has, in fact, an affirmative meaning in English.

### Here are some sample sentences using various forms of *S-ar putea*:

1. **S-ar putea** *ca planul lui să nu meargă.*  
"His plan might not work."
2. **Nu s-ar putea** *să rămânem fără bani?*  
"Could we run out of money?"
3. **S-ar fi putut** *pierde orice speranță de salvare.*  
"Any hope of salvation could have been lost."

## 2. How to use *Sigur* - "surely"

In the Romanian language, *sigur(ă)* "sure, surely" could be either:

- An **adjective** - It can be used with three different meanings in Romanian to describe a noun or pronoun:

1. indicating the quality of being indubitable - e.g. *Este un lucru sigur că l-am văzut.* "It is a sure thing that I saw him."
2. that of being convinced about something - e.g. *Elena era sigură că l-a văzut.* "Elena was sure she saw him."

3. or that of having a confident attitude - e.g. *Atitudinea să **sigură** l-a făcut să câştige.* "His confident attitude made him win."

- An affirmation **adverb** - It can be used with multiple meanings in a sentence:

1. Considering a fact as be or not be certain - e.g. **Sigur** că da! "Yes, sure."
2. Granting permission - e.g. **Sigur**, vă rog! "Sure, please!"
3. Verifying a fact - e.g. **Sigur** este el? "Are you sure it is him?"
4. Confirming a fact - e.g. **Sigur** este el. "It is surely him."

Its negative alternative is *nesigur(ă)* "uncertain, insecure, doubtful" - for the adjective, and *nu e sigur* "it is not sure" for the adverbial structure.

### Here are some sample sentences using the adverb **sigur** "surely"

1. **Sigur** va veni cu noi.  
"He will surely come with us."
2. *Nu e **sigur** cine a făcut asta.*  
"It is not sure who did this."
3. **Sigur** e Maria?  
"Is it surely Maria?"

### 3. How to use **Probabil că...** - "it's likely that..."

---

*Probabil că...* "it's likely that..." it is an adverbial structure made out of the adverb *probabil* "probably, likely" and the conjunction *că* "that." It is used to express that a specific fact is probable (usually the fact is following the structure in the sentence).

Also, the negative alternative can be built by adding the negation *nu* "not" after the structure *probabil că* "it is likely that" - *probabil că nu* "it is likely that" + verb + "not."

Moreover, various degrees can be added to express more or less probability for the described fact - **foarte** *probabil că* "it is very likely that...", **foarte puțin** *probabil că* "it is less likely that...", or **deloc** *probabil că* "it is not at all likely that..."

*Probabil(ă)* "probable" is also an adjective (e.g. *Sunt doar niște cifre **probabile**.*

"These are only probable figures.") or used to form expressions such as *timpul probabil* "the weather (forecast)."

The complete form of the adverbial expression in Romanian is (*a fi*) *probabil (că)* "it is likely that..." + verb in Indicative or Conjunctive.

Indicative	Conjunctive
<b><i>Probabil (că)</i></b> <i>a fost pe aici.</i> "Probably he was here."	<b><i>E probabil să fi fost pe aici.</i></b> "It is likely that he was here."

**Here are more sample sentences using *Probabil că...* - "it's likely that..." and its variations:**

1. ***Probabil că*** *mâine va veni Mihai la noi.*  
"It is likely that Mihai will come tomorrow to us."
2. ***E mai puțin probabil să*** *îl găsești dacă mergi pe acolo.*  
"It is less likely to find him if you go over there."
3. ***Deloc probabil să*** *îl pot vedea de aici.*  
"It is not at all likely to see it from here."

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. *La știri se spune că mâine s-ar putea să plouă.*  
"They said over the news that tomorrow it might rain."
2. *Sau s-ar putea să fie însorit.*  
"Or it might be sunny."
3. *Da, așa este. Probabil că ai dreptate.*  
"Yes, that's correct. I guess you're right."

**Sample Sentences:**

1. *Nu sunt așa de sigur că ajunge mâine.*  
"I am not so sure I will come tomorrow."
2. *S-ar putea să plouă după-amiază.*  
"It might rain this afternoon."
3. *E posibil să întârzii la petrecere.*  
"I may be late to the party."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Media in Romania

---

In the Romanian social context, press freedom is defined as being protected by the Constitution, both for media publications, journalists, and even bloggers. However, the practice is rather censored by the financial insecurity of this professional environment, the business interests in what is published, and finally, the political implications that are at stake for any political party that has a media publication. When talking about media channels, the most popular one is still the television. Romanians have very specific preferences in terms of the channels that they watch, based on their political preferences, entertainment choices, TV shows or TV hosts that they like. Radio is another popular form of media that Romanians are accustomed to. Some of them only use the radio in the car while they are commuting, others open it in the morning when they wake up to listen to the news, and there are some who tune in on radio frequencies online for their favorite music. What is interesting here is the fact that the young generation doesn't trust television or the radio as much as their parents, and moreover, they dislike all the commercials that are delivered in between the shows or songs. They consider the internet as the best form of staying in touch with what happens around the country or the world. One other strong argument here is that the young generation loves to filter their own information online, based on their preferences (e.g. customized social media newsfeeds, filtered content on video platforms, and so on).

### Useful expression:

1. *vorbă lungă*  
"a long yarn"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #19

# Getting Emotional in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# **19**

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Te-ai supărat pe mine pentru că ți-am băut cafeaua?
2. Andreea: Nu. Sunt supărată pentru că ai vorbit toată ziua.
3. Masanobu: Da, așa e. Eu nu beau cafea de obicei.
4. Andreea: Deci de aceea ai fost atât de activ toată ziua.
5. Masanobu: Scuze...
6. Andreea: Nu e nimic. Sunt doar stresată astăzi.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: Did you get upset at me because I drank your coffee?
2. Andreea: No, I'm angry because you have been talking all day.
3. Masanobu: Yes, you're right. I usually don't drink coffee.
4. Andreea: So that's why you've been so active all day.
5. Masanobu: Sorry...
6. Andreea: It's nothing. I'm just stressed out today.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a se supăra	to mind; to get angry	verb

a bea	drink	verb
supărată	upset	adjective
a vorbi	talk	verb
Scuze.	Sorry.	interjection
doar	only	adverb
stresat	stressed	adjective
nu e nimic	it's nothing	phrase

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Nu te supăra din cauza notelor.</b> "Don't get upset because of the grades."</p>	<p><b>Sunt supărat pe tine.</b> I'm angry at you.</p>
<p><b>El bea apă.</b> "He drinks water."</p>	<p><b>Mircea e supărat că nu a câștigat concursul.</b> "Mircea is upset because he did not win the contest."</p>
<p><b>Eu vorbesc engleză.</b> "I speak English."</p>	<p><b>Scuze, cum pot ajunge la toaleta femeilor?</b> "Sorry, how can I get to the women's toilet?"</p>
<p><b>Am doar o întrebare.</b> "I have only one question."</p>	<p><b>Am un coleg foarte stresat.</b> "I have a very stressed colleague."</p>
<p><b>Nu e nimic că am pierdut azi, e și mâine o zi.</b> "It's nothing that we lost today because tomorrow is a new day."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **de aceea...** **"that's why..."**

It is an adverbial structure made out of the preposition **de** "of" and the demonstrative pronoun in feminine singular form **aceea** "that." The literal translation would be "of that."

It is used to refer to the causality or the consequences of a particular action in a sentence. This form of the expression is used more in rather formal situations, whilst the more informal version of it would be *de aia* "that's why..."

### **For example:**

1. *Am fost într-o ședință, de aceea nu ți-am răspuns.*  
"I was in a meeting, that's why I didn't answer."

## **Nu este nimic.** **"It's nothing."**

It is an expression made out of the negative form of the verb **a fi** "to be" in present tense third person in singular and the negative pronoun **nimic** "nothing." The literal translation would be "it is not nothing."

It is used in situations when someone is apologizing and the other reacts to assure that there is no problem from his point of view with what happened. The short version of it can also be used in rather more informal situations - *nu-i nimic* "it's nothing."

### **For example:**

1. *Trebuia să fac asta oricum, nu este nimic.*  
"I had to do this anyway, it's nothing."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Expressing Emotions**

***Sunt supărată pentru că ai vorbit toată ziua.***  
**"I'm angry because you have been talking all day."**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. **use verbs to express emotions**
2. **use adjectives to express emotions**

### 3. use other expressions to convey emotional states

#### 1. How to use verbs to express emotions

In Romanian language, there are several verbs that are more commonly used to express emotions. In the chart below, you can find some of the most important ones grouped by type of emotion expressed.

#### Chart with common verbs expressing emotions in Romanian

Expressing positive emotions	Expressing neutral emotions	Expressing negative emotions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>a(-i) plăcea / a-i face plăcere</i> "to like" + verb in Conjunctive</li><li>● <i>a se bucura</i> "to enjoy"</li><li>● <i>a iubi</i> "to love"</li><li>● <i>a simpatiza</i> "to sympathize"</li><li>● <i>a admira</i> "to admire"</li><li>● <i>a aprecia</i> "to appreciate"</li><li>● <i>a-l interesa</i> "to interest (him/her)"</li><li>● <i>a-l pasiona</i> "to be passionate"</li><li>● <i>a prefera</i> "to prefer"</li><li>● <i>a dori</i> "to aim"</li><li>● <i>a spera</i> "to hope"</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>a-l surprinde</i> "to be surprised"</li><li>● <i>a (se) / -l mira</i> "to be marveled"</li><li>● <i>a-i păsa</i> "to care"</li><li>● <i>a-l preocupa</i> "to be preoccupied"</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <i>a-i displace</i> "to dislike"</li><li>● <i>a nu-i place</i> "to not like"</li><li>● <i>a detesta</i> "to detest"</li><li>● <i>a urî</i> "to hate"</li><li>● <i>a se enerva</i> "to be annoyed"</li><li>● <i>a-l irita</i> "to be irritated"</li><li>● <i>a-l dezgusta</i> "to be disgusted"</li><li>● <i>a-l nemulțumi</i> "to displease him/her"</li><li>● <i>a se întrista</i> "to sadden"</li><li>● <i>a-l decepționa</i> "to deceive him/her"</li><li>● <i>a regreta</i> "to regret"</li><li>● <i>a se teme</i> "to be afraid"</li><li>● <i>a-l durea</i> "to hurt him/her"</li></ul>

Here are some sample sentences using common verbs to express emotions:

1. **Mă întristează să aud că a plecat fără să zică.**  
"It saddens me to hear that he left without saying anything."

2. *Lui Mihai îi place să joace fotbal.*  
"Mihai likes playing soccer."
3. *Andreea s-a mirat să afle că nu vei mai veni.*  
"Andreea was surprised to hear that you are not coming anymore."

## 2. How to use adjectives to express emotions

---

Various adjectives are used in Romanian to express emotions. Many of them form from the participle of the above mentioned verbs. Below you can find the ones used to refer to the most basic emotions.

### Chart with common adjectives expressing emotions in Romanian

---

Emotion	Sg., Masc.	Sg., Fem.	Pl., Masc.	Pl., Fem
---------	------------	-----------	------------	----------

---

	<i>plăcut</i> "pleasant"	<i>plăcută</i> "pleasant"	<i>plăcuți</i> "pleasant"	<i>plăcute</i> "pleasant"
	<i>neplăcut</i> "unpleasant"	<i>neplăcută</i> "unpleasant"	<i>neplăcuți</i> "unpleasant"	<i>neplăcute</i> "unpleasant"
	<i>mulțumit</i> "satisfied"	<i>mulțumită</i> "satisfied"	<i>mulțumiți</i> "satisfied"	<i>mulțumite</i> "satisfied"
	<i>nemuțumit</i> "discontented"	<i>nemuțumită</i> "discontented"	<i>nemuțumiți</i> "discontented"	<i>nemuțumite</i> "discontented"
	<i>dezgustat</i> "disgusted"	<i>dezgustată</i> "disgusted"	<i>dezgustați</i> "disgusted"	<i>dezgustate</i> "disgusted"
pleasure delight contentment discontentment disgust	<i>dezgustător</i> "disgusting"	<i>dezgustătoare</i> "disgusting"	<i>dezgustători</i> "disgusting"	<i>dezgustătoare</i> "disgusting"
	<i>bun</i> "good"	<i>bună</i> "good"	<i>buni</i> "good"	<i>bune</i> "good"
	<i>rău</i> "bad"	<i>rea</i> "bad"	<i>răi</i> "bad"	<i>rele</i> "bad"
	<i>frumos</i> "beautiful"	<i>frumoasă</i> "beautiful"	<i>frumoși</i> "beautiful"	<i>frumoase</i> "beautiful"
	<i>urât</i> "ugly"	<i>urâtă</i> "ugly"	<i>urâți</i> "ugly"	<i>urâte</i> "ugly"
	<i>minunat</i> "wonderful"	<i>minunată</i> "wonderful"	<i>minunați</i> "wonderful"	<i>minunate</i> "wonderful"
	<i>îngrozitor</i> "awful"	<i>îngrozitoare</i> "awful"	<i>îngrozitori</i> "awful"	<i>îngrozitoare</i> "awful"
	<i>extraordinar</i> "amazing"	<i>extraordinară</i> "amazing"	<i>extraordinari</i> "amazing"	<i>extraordinare</i> "amazing"

happiness joy sadness anger	<i>fericit</i> "happy"	<i>fericită</i> "happy"	<i>fericiți</i> "happy"	<i>fericite</i> "happy"
	<i>nefericit</i> "unhappy"	<i>nefericită</i> "unhappy"	<i>nefericiți</i> "unhappy"	<i>nefericite</i> "unhappy"
	<i>bucuros</i> "glad"	<i>bucuroasă</i> "glad"	<i>bucuroși</i> "glad"	<i>bucuroase</i> "glad"
	<i>trist</i> "sad"	<i>tristă</i> "sad"	<i>trști</i> "sad"	<i>triste</i> "sad"
	<i>îndurerat</i> "pained"	<i>îndurerată</i> "pained"	<i>îndurerați</i> "pained"	<i>îndurerate</i> "pained"
	<i>încântat</i> "delighted"	<i>încântată</i> "delighted"	<i>încântați</i> "delighted"	<i>încântate</i> "delighted"
<i>supărat</i> "angry"	<i>supărată</i> "angry"	<i>supărați</i> "angry"	<i>supărate</i> "angry"	
love sympathy hate	<i>iubit</i> "loved"	<i>iubită</i> "loved"	<i>iubiți</i> "loved"	<i>iubite</i> "loved"
	<i>îndrăgostit</i> "in love"	<i>îndrăgostită</i> "in love"	<i>îndrăgostiți</i> "in love"	<i>îndrăgostite</i> "in love"
	<i>simpatic</i> "cute"	<i>simpatică</i> "cute"	<i>simpatici</i> "cute"	<i>simpatice</i> "cute"
	<i>indignat</i> "resentful"	<i>indignată</i> "resentful"	<i>indignați</i> "resentful"	<i>indignate</i> "resentful"
	<i>urât</i> "hated"	<i>urâtă</i> "hated"	<i>urâți</i> "hated"	<i>urâte</i> "hated"
	<i>detestat</i> "disliked"	<i>detestată</i> "disliked"	<i>detestați</i> "disliked"	<i>detestate</i> "disliked"

	<i>calm</i> "calm"	<i>calmă</i> "calm"	<i>calmi</i> "calm"	<i>calme</i> "calm"
calm	<i>relaxat</i> "relaxed"	<i>relaxată</i> "relaxed"	<i>relaxați</i> "relaxed"	<i>relaxate</i> "relaxed"
fear	<i>speriat</i> "scared"	<i>speriată</i> "scared"	<i>speriați</i> "scared"	<i>speriate</i> "scared"
	<i>stresat</i> "stressed"	<i>stresată</i> "stressed"	<i>stresați</i> "stressed"	<i>stresate</i> "stressed"

### Here are three sample sentences using adjectives used to express emotions

1. *Își dorește să aibă colegi **mai relaxați** la serviciu.*  
"He wants to have more relaxed colleagues at work."
2. *Erau amândoi **fericiți** de rezultatul primit.*  
"They were both happy with the result reached."
3. *Am cumpărat o supă **foarte bună** de la cantina de peste drum.*  
"I bought a very good soup from the canteen across the road."

### 3. How to use other expressions to convey emotional states

In Romanian, there are multiple expressions used to convey emotional states.

We can group these by their structure as follows:

1. The verb *a fi* "to be" + adjective expressing an emotional state - e.g. *a fi fericit* "to be happy"
2. A + personal pronoun + "to be" verb in infinitive + emotional state - e.g. *a-i fi frică* "to be afraid"
3. A + personal pronoun + other verb in infinitive + emotional state - e.g. *a-i părea rău* "to be sorry", *a avea chef/poftă de...* "be in the mood of...",
4. Idioms - e.g. *a rămâne fără cuvinte* "to remain speechless"
5. Using a single word exclamations - e.g. "Excellent!"
6. Using exclamations formed from *ce* "what" + noun or adjective/adverb - e.g. *Ce frumos!* "How nice!"

7. Verb + adverbial structures - e.g. *Vin cu plăcere.* "I am happy to come."
8. Interjections - e.g. *Vai!* "Oh!"

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Te-ai supărat pe mine pentru că ți-am băut cafeaua?*  
"Did you get upset at me because I drank your coffee?"
2. *Nu. Sunt supărată pentru că ai vorbit toată ziua.*  
"No, I'm angry because you have been talking all day."
3. *Nu e nimic. Sunt doar stresată astăzi.*  
"It's nothing. I'm just stressed out today."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Mi-a plăcut filmul de ieri.*  
"I liked the movie from yesterday."
2. *Îi e frică de câini.*  
"She is afraid of dogs."
3. *Mi-a zis că e fericită la noul ei loc de muncă.*  
"She told me that she is happy at her new job."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Communication styles in Romania

---

One of the most common things said about Romanians is that they are very friendly, hospitable and extremely expressive when they talk. They have Latin blood running through them, so they have warm, welcoming, and passionate personalities. If you encounter a Romanian for the first time, you should firmly shake hands, present your name and smile. Direct eye contact is highly appreciated in Romania, so if you want to show that you are interested in the person or the conversation, that's something that you should bear in mind. Hugging and kissing on the cheek is one of the most common forms of greetings when you meet your Romanian friends. But this is a habit that becomes more visible after you spend more time with the person. When you engage in a conversation with a Romanian person, you will see their expressivity and how they use their body, hands, and fingers in order to support what they are saying. In

terms of conversational subjects, Romanians don't think that it's impolite to talk with people about political convictions, religious orientations, income, weight, family habits, etc. Public displays of anger, disappointment, affection or even love are commonly seen in the public Romanian life. They usually speak-out loudly and aren't afraid to show their emotions in public.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Ce mai faci?*  
"How are you?"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #20

# Doing the Math in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 11 Cultural Insight

# 20

## ROMANIAN

1. Mihai: Masanobu, am nevoie de ajutorul tău.
2. Masanobu: Sigur, ce este?
3. Mihai: Spune-mi cât fac  $2+2$  (doi plus doi).
4. Masanobu: Poftim? Glumești?
5. Mihai: Nu, nu, am auzit de curând că uneori rezultatul este 5 (cinci).
6. Masanobu: Aa, cunosc povestea. Dar în 99% (nouă zeci și nouă la sută) din cazuri rezultatul este 4 (patru).
7. Mihai: Ce bine!

## ENGLISH

1. Mihai: Masanobu, I need your help.
2. Masanobu: Sure, what is it?
3. Mihai: Tell me how much is  $2+2$ .
4. Masanobu: What? Are you joking?
5. Mihai: No, no, I recently heard that sometimes the result is 5.
6. Masanobu: Oh, I know the story. But in 99% of the cases, the result is 4.
7. Mihai: Good!

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a avea nevoie	need	verb
plus	plus	adverb
a glumi	joke	verb
uneori	sometimes	adverb
poveste	story	noun
tău	your	adjective
poftim, poftim?	Here you are. What?	expression
de curând	recently	adverb
rezultat	result	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Ar fi avut nevoie de mai mult efort ca să reușească asta.</b></p> <p>"He would have needed more effort to succeed at that."</p>	<p><b>Zece plus doi fac doisprezece.</b></p> <p>"Ten plus two is twelve."</p>
<p><b>Mihai glumește foarte mult.</b></p> <p>"Mihai is joking a lot."</p>	<p><b>Uneori îmi vine să renunț.</b></p> <p>"Sometimes I feel like giving up."</p>
<p><b>Andreea ne-a spus o poveste pe care o știa de la bunica ei.</b></p> <p>"Andreea told us a story she knew from her grandmother."</p>	<p><b>Îmi dai, te rog, cuțitul tău?</b></p> <p>"Can you, please, give me your knife?"</p>
<p><b>Poftim? Așa tare s-a supărat?</b></p> <p>"What? Was he really upset?"</p>	<p><b>Mulțumesc că ați așteptat. Poftim.</b></p> <p>"Thank you for waiting. Here you are."</p>

<p><b>Am aflat de curând că nu mai mergem la Brașov.</b></p> <p>"I found out recently that we are not going to Brasov anymore."</p>	<p><b>După tot efortul eu cred că rezultatul a meritat.</b></p> <p>"After all the effort, I think the result was worth it."</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **Glumești?** **"Are you kidding?"**

It is an interrogative sentence made out of the interrogative form of the verb **a glumi** "to joke" in the second person singular form. It literally means "Are you joking?"

It is used when someone is surprised about what their interlocutor is informing him or her about. It can also express a more negative surprise, such as an offense. In more formal situations, the second person in plural form is used - *Glumiți?* "Are you kidding me?"

#### **For example:**

1. *Glumești când zici că s-a stricat mașina?*  
"Are you kidding when you say the car was broken?"

### **Ce este?** **"What is it?"**

It is a common interrogative expression made out of the relative pronoun **ce** "what" and the verb **a fi** "to be" in its simple present tense, third person singular form. It literally translates as "What is it?"

It is used to ask your interlocutor about what is happening, especially if he or she wants something from you. A more formal way to express that is *Despre ce este vorba?* "What is it about?"

#### **For example:**

1. *Ce este? Ce s-a întâmplat cu tine, Mihai?*  
"What is it? What is the matter with you, Mihai?"

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Basic Math Expressions**

**Spune-mi cât fac 2+2 (doi plus doi).**  
**"Tell me how much is 2+2."**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

- 1. use expressions for addition and subtraction**
  - 2. how to use *A ori B*, to mean "A times B"**
  - 3. how to use *A împărțit la B* to mean "A divided by B"**
- 

## **1. How to use expressions for addition and subtraction**

---

*Adunarea* "addition" and *scăderea* "subtraction" are the most basic mathematical operations that Romanian children learn in school from early ages.

Below you can find the most important elements used in expressing these basic operations.

### **Expressions for addition and subtraction chart**

---

<b>Expressing the operation</b>	<i>adunare</i> "addition"	<i>scădere</i> "subtraction"
<b>Expressing the elements of the operation</b>	The two numbers being added are called <i>termeni</i> "terms," and the result is called <i>sumă</i> "sum."	The number from which is subtracted is called <i>descăzut</i> "minuend," the number that is subtracted is called <i>scăzător</i> "subtrahend," and the result is called <i>diferență</i> "difference."

## Expressing the action (verb)

*a aduna* "to add"

Present tense:

*eu adun, tu aduni, el/ea adună, noi adunăm, voi adunați, ei adună*  
 "I add, you add, he/she/it adds, we add, you add, they add"

Simple past:

*eu am adunat, tu ai adunat, el/ea a adunat, noi am adunat, voi ați adunat, ei au adunat*  
 "I added, you added, he/she/it added, we added, you added, they added"

Simple future:

*eu voi aduna, tu vei aduna, el/ea va aduna, noi vom aduna, voi veți aduna, ei vor aduna*  
 "I will add, you will add, he/she/it will add, we will add, you will add, they will add"

*a scădea* "to subtract"

Present tense:

*eu scad, tu scazi, el/ea scade, noi scădem, voi scădeți, ei scad*  
 "I subtract, you subtract, he/she/it subtracts, we subtract, you subtract, they subtract"

Simple past:

*eu am scăzut, tu ai scăzut, el/ea a scăzut, noi am scăzut, voi ați scăzut, ei au scăzut*  
 "I subtracted, you subtracted, he/she/it subtracted, we subtracted, you subtracted, they subtracted"

Simple future:

*eu voi scădea, tu vei scădea, el/ea va scădea, noi vom scădea, voi veți scădea, ei vor scădea*  
 "I will subtract, you will subtract, he/she/it will subtract, we will subtract, you will subtract, they will subtract"

Expressing specific sign	+, <i>plus</i> "plus," și "and"	-, <i>minus</i> "minus," fără "without"
<b>Expressing the result</b>  or one of the verbs in infinitive present tense for third person: <i>fac</i> (plural) "make," <i>este</i> (singular) "is," <i>dă</i> "gives" or <i>rezultă</i> "results."	<i>egal</i> "equals"  <i>egal</i> "equals"  or one of the verbs in infinitive present tense for third person: <i>fac</i> (plural) "make," <i>este</i> (singular) "is," <i>dă</i> "gives" or <i>rezultă</i> "results."	<i>egal</i> "equals"  <i>egal</i> "equals"  or one of the verbs in infinitive present tense for third person: <i>fac</i> (plural) "make," <i>este</i> (singular) "is," <i>dă</i> "gives" or <i>rezultă</i> "results."

## Here are some sample sentences

$$2 + 2 = 4$$

1. *Doi plus doi egal patru.*  
"Two plus two equals four."
2. *Doi și doi fac patru.*  
"Two and two is four."

$$2 - 1 = 1$$

1. *Doi minus unu egal unu.*  
"Two minus one equals one."
2. *Doi fără unu fac unu.*  
"Two without one is one."

$$10 - 1 + 2 = 11$$

1. *Zece minus unu plus doi egal unsprezece.*  
"Ten minus one plus two equals eleven."

## 2. How to use *ori*, to mean "A times B"

When referring to a multiplication operation in mathematics, Romanians use the adverb *ori* "times" or the participle (always on singular, masculine) *de/înmulțit* "multiplied" plus the preposition *cu* "with:" *de/înmulțit cu* "multiplied by."

### Expressing the operation

*înmulțire* "multiplication"

### Expressing the elements of the operation

The two numbers being multiplied are called *factori* "factors," and the result is called *produs* "product."

---

*a înmulți* "to multiply"

Present tense:

*eu înmulțesc, tu înmulțești, el/ea înmulțește, noi înmulțim, voi înmulțiți, ei înmulțesc*

"I multiply, you multiply, he/she/it multiplies, we multiply, you multiply, they multiply"

Simple past:

*eu am înmulțit, tu ai înmulțit, el/ea a înmulțit, noi am înmulțit, voi ați înmulțit, ei au înmulțit*

"I multiplied, you multiplied, he/she/it multiplied, we multiplied, you multiplied, they multiplied"

Simple future:

*eu voi înmulți, tu vei înmulți, el/ea va înmulți, noi vom înmulți, voi veți înmulți, ei vor înmulți*

"I will multiply, you will multiply, he/she/it will multiply, we will multiply, you will multiply, they will multiply"

## Expressing the action (verb)

---

### Expressing specific sign

*x, ·, ori*, "times," *înmulțit cu* "multiplied by"

*egal* "equals"

### Expressing the result

or one of the verbs in infinitive present tense for third person: *fac* (plural) "make," *este* (singular) "is," *dă* "gives" or *rezultă* "results."

---

## Here are some sample sentences of expressing multiplication operations

$$3 \times 3 = 9$$

1. *Trei ori trei egal nouă.*  
"Three times three equals nine."

2. *Trei (de)înmulțit cu trei fac nouă.*  
"Three multiplied by three is nine."
3. *Trei ori trei dă nouă.*  
"Three times three gives nine."
4. *Trei ori trei este nouă.*  
"Three times three is nine."
5. *Trei ori trei rezultă nouă.*  
"Three times three results (in) nine."

$$12 \times 5 = 60$$

1. *Doisprezece ori cinci egal șaizeci.*  
"Twelve times five equals sixty."

$$(2 + 3) \times 4 = 5 \times 4 = 20$$

1. *Paranteză doi plus doi paranteză ori patru egal cinci ori patru egal douăzeci.*  
"Bracket two plus two bracket times four equal five times four equals twenty."

### 3. How to use *împărțit la* to mean "A divided by B"

When referring to a division operation in mathematics, Romanians use the word *împărțit la* "divided by."

Expressing the operation	<i>împărțire</i> "division"
Expressing the elements of the operation	The number being divided is called <i>deîmpărțit</i> "dividend," the number by which it is divided is called <i>împărțitor</i> "divisor," and the result is called <i>cât</i> "quotient."

---

*a împărțiți* "to divide"

Present tense:

*eu împart, tu împart, el/ea împarți, noi împărțim, voi împărțiți, ei împart*  
"I divide, you divide, he/she/it divides, we divide, you divide, they divide"

Simple past:

*eu am împărțit, tu ai împărțit, el/ea a împărțit, noi am împărțit, voi ați împărțit, ei au împărțit*  
"I divided, you divided, he/she/it divided, we divided, you divided, they divided"

Simple future:

*eu voi împărți, tu vei împărți, el/ea va împărți, noi vom împărți, voi veți împărți, ei vor împărți*  
"I will divide, you will divide, he/she/it will divide, we will divide, you will divide, they will divide"

## Expressing the action (verb)

---

### Expressing specific sign

*:, - , împărțit la* "divided by"

*egal* "equals"

or one of the verbs in infinitive present tense for third person: *fac* (plural) "make," *este* (singular) "is," *dă* "gives" or *rezultă* "results."

### Expressing the result

---

## Here are some sample sentences of expressing multiplication operations

$$12 : 2 = 6$$

1. *Doisprezece împărțit la doi egal șase.*  
"Twelve divided by two equals six."
2. *Doisprezece împărțit la doi fac șase.*  
"Twelve divided by two makes six."

3. *Doisprezece împărțit la doi dă șase.*  
"Twelve divided by two gives six."
4. *Doisprezece împărțit la doi este șase.*  
"Twelve divided by two is six."
5. *Doisprezece împărțit la doi rezultă șase.*  
"Twelve divided by two results (in) six."

$$3 : 3 = 1$$

1. *Trei împărțit la trei egal unu.*  
"Three divided by three equals one."

$$(4 : 1) - 5 = 4 - 5 = -1$$

1. *Paranteză patru împărțit la unu paranteză minus cinci egal patru minus cinci egal minus unu.*  
"Bracket four divided by one bracket minus five equal four minus five equals negative one."

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Spune-mi cât fac 2+2 (doi plus doi).*  
"Tell me how much is 2+2."
2. *Nu, nu, am auzit de curând că uneori rezultatul este 5 (cinci).*  
"No, no, I recently heard that sometimes the result is 5."
3. *Aa, cunosc povestea. Dar în 99% (nouă zeci și nouă la sută) din cazuri rezultatul este 4 (patru).*  
"Oh, I know the story. But in 99% of the cases the result is 4."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Doi minus doi egal zero.*  
"Two minus two equals zero."
2. *Orice înmulțit cu zero face zero.*  
"Anything multiplied by zero is zero."
3. *Toată ziua am făcut calcule matematice și am obosit.*  
"I did math calculations all day and I got tired."

# CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Research areas in Romania:

---

In the current social and political Romanian context, research, development, and innovation are not considered top priorities for the government and local leaders. Regardless of this aspect, given Romania's entrance into the European Union in 2007, the Romanian researchers took things into their own hands and started applying to European funds that can grant them financial opportunities to work on the things they are interested in. Of course, getting a research grant in Romania depends on many factors, but the truth is that this is one of the most reasonable approaches to going on the researching path here. High school and college students have the opportunity to show off their abilities at international contests, especially in subjects like math or computer science. Their achievements are remarkable, many of them actually winning gold and silver medals in these competitions. Romanians have a great deal of potential when it comes to technology topics: engineering, cybernetics, informational communications, telecommunications, etc. On the other hand, subjects like Arts and Humanities, for example, don't get the same attention as the technological topics do. Usually, researchers that want to discover more about these subjects choose to get a scholarship or a research grant at a University abroad where they can get more resources to support their research projects. Although, there are some artistic fields that grew significantly recently, such as in film production. From my experience, researchers in Romania have the energy, enthusiasm, and power to provide answers to actual problems that happen in the Romanian social context, but they lack the funding to do so.

## Useful expression:

1. *minte brici*  
"sharp mind"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #21

## Which Way are the Baked Goods in Romania?

---

### CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# 21

## ROMANIAN

1. Mihai: Nu vă supărați, este vreo brutărie în apropiere?
2. Om de pe stradă: Da. Este una aproape.
3. Mihai: Și cum pot ajunge acolo?
4. Om de pe stradă: Luați-o prima la stânga la semafor, mergeți drept înainte și este pe dreapta.
5. Mihai: Este departe?
6. Om de pe stradă: Nu, nu este departe.
7. Mihai: Vă mulțumesc mult.
8. Om de pe stradă: Nu aveți pentru ce.

## ENGLISH

1. Mihai: Excuse me. Is there a bakery nearby?
2. Man on the street: Yes. There's one nearby.
3. Mihai: And how can I get there?
4. Man on the street: Take the first left at the traffic light, go straight ahead, then it's on the right.
5. Mihai: Is it far?

CONT'D OVER

6. Man on the street: No, it's not far.
7. Mihai: Thank you so much.
8. Man on the street: Don't mention it.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
brutărie	bakery	noun
în apropiere	near	adverb
Acolo.	Right over there.	expression
semafor	traffic light	noun
la stânga	left turn	phrase
vreo	any	pronoun
ajunge undeva	get somewhere	phrase
dreapta	right	noun
nu aveți pentru ce	Don't mention it.	phrase

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Mama conduce o brutărie.</b> "My mom runs a bakery."</p>	<p><b>Casa bunicului este în apropiere.</b> "Grandpa's house is nearby."</p>
<p><b>Nu este admis să folosiți artificii în apropierea clădirii.</b> It is not allowed to use fireworks near buildings.</p>	<p><b>Ți-am lăsat telefonul acolo.</b> "I left your phone over there."</p>

<p><b>Ai așteptat la semafor.</b> "You waited at the traffic light."</p>	<p><b>Când te uiți la stânga după clădirea mare, o să mă vezi.</b> "When you look to the left after the big building, you'll see me."</p>
<p><b>Ai văzut vreo brichetă pe masă?</b> "Did you see any lighters on the table?"</p>	<p><b>Am ajuns foarte departe în largul mării.</b> "We got very far offshore."</p>
<p><b>Pe dreapta străzii sunt multe magazine.</b> "On the right of the street, there are many shops."</p>	<p><b>Am greșit și am făcut dreapta.</b> I turned to the right by mistake.</p>
<p><b>O iei la dreapta pâna la metrou.</b> Take a right until the subway.</p>	<p><b>Nu aveți pentru ce. A fost plăcerea mea.</b> "Don't mention it. It was my pleasure."</p>

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***Nu vă supărați,*** **"Excuse me."**

It is a colloquial expression including the negative reflexive form of the verb **a (se) supăra** "to (get) upset" in the imperative form, for the second person in plural form. It can literally be translated as "do not get upset," having the equivalent translation in English as "Excuse me."

This is used as a form of politeness, to introduce a request on behalf of the speaker. The more informal version of this expression is the same addressing but using the second person in singular form of the verb - *nu te supăra* "excuse me."

### **For example:**

1. *Nu vă supărați, cum pot ajunge la Gara de Nord?*  
"Excuse me, how can I get to the North Station?"

### ***Nu aveți pentru ce*** **"Don't mention it."**

It is an expression made out of the verb **a avea** "to have" in its negative form for the second person in plural form followed by the preposition **pentru** "for" and the relative pronoun **ce** "what." The literal translation of the structure would be "you do not have for what" meaning, in fact, "don't mention it."

It is used to give a polite and humble reply to someone that is thanking you for something you did for him or her. The more informal version of it would involve changing the person of the verb from second plural to second singular - *nu ai pentru ce* "don't mention it."

### For example:

1. *Nu aveți pentru ce. Eu doar mi-am făcut datoria.*  
"Don't mention it. I only did my duty."

## GRAMMAR

### The Focus of This Lesson is Giving Directions

***Luăți-o prima la stânga la semafor, mergeți drept înainte și este pe dreapta.***

**"Take the first left at the traffic light, go straight ahead, then it's on the right."**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use ***cum pot...*** plus an infinitive verb to say "how can I...?"
2. use ***după plus ce*** to say "after (doing something)"
3. give directions using verbs

---

### 1. How to use ***cum pot...*** plus an infinitive verb to say "how can I...?"

---

The *cum pot...* "how can I..." expression is a combination of a modal adverb *cum* "how," the modal verb *pot* "can" followed by the "I" which in this case, is only translated in English, while in Romanian it is self-implied. The expression is most commonly used in situations that are connected with asking a person for information in many types of scenarios: finding directions, seeking advice at the gym, learning new skills, or staying healthy, etc.

The phrase is only used in interrogative sentences followed by either an infinitive verb to ask for information that is required for a current situation or a conjunctive verb to express interest for information that is needed further on in time, without a

specific date in time.

General pattern is: [*cum* "how" + *pot* "can I" + infinitive/conjunctive verb + complement]

In order **to ask for directions using the *cum pot* "how can I..." phrase**, the structure used is:

---

*cum pot* + the verb *ajunge* "to get to" in infinitive or conjunctive + preposition (the most common are *în* "in" or *la* "to") + noun

---

## Here are some sample sentences using *cum pot* "how can I" to ask for directions

1. ***Cum pot*** *ajunge în piața din centrul orașului?*  
"How can I get to the market in the center of the city?"
2. ***Cum pot*** *să trec dincolo de acest pod?*  
"How can I go beyond this bridge?"
3. ***Cum pot*** *să ajung la Brașov cel mai repede?*  
"How can I get to Brasov the fastest?"

## 2. How to use *după plus ce* to say "after (doing something)"

---

The phrase *după ce* "after (doing something)" is constructed from two prepositions (*după* "after" and *ce* "what") with the linguistic purpose of describing that a step which should be taken after a certain action has been finalized. In the Romanian spoken language, this phrase is most commonly used in these situations:

1. **Giving directions:** *După ce treci de cofetărie, virează la dreapta.* "After you pass the bakery, turn right."
2. **Giving instructions:** *După ce termini de amestecat supa, adaugă o linguriță de sare.* "After you finish mixing the soup, add a tablespoon of salt."
3. **Giving advice:** *După ce înveți să te dai cu skateboard-ul, o să poți face și scheme.* "After you learn how to ride the skateboard, you will do tricks as well."

## General Phrase Structure

---

*după ce* "after" + present tense verb + infinitive verb

---

**Below you can find 3 sentence examples with the phrase "after (doing something)" while giving directions:**

1. **După ce** treci de intersecție, vei găsi parcul de câini.  
"After you pass the intersection, you will find the dog park."
2. O să găsești muzeul **după ce** ieși la gura de metrou din Piața Victoriei.  
"You will find the museum after your come out of the subway in Victoria Square."
3. Clubul de jazz e pe partea stângă, **după ce** traversezi intersecția.  
"The jazz club is on the left, after you cross the intersection."

### 3. How to give directions using verbs

---

Verbs can be used in a variety of situations for giving directions. Here are the most common ones:

1. **Indicating a direction:** *a merge* "to walk" (*spre* "toward" / *la* "to" / *până la* "until" / *de la ... la* "from... to"), *a urmări* "to follow"
2. **Searching further directions:** *a căuta* "to search" (e.g. *strada* "the street"), *a ajunge* "to get / to arrive" (*la* / *până la* "to")
3. **Changing directions:** *a schimba (la)* "to change (at)," *a face (la, spre)* "to turn (to)," *a coti* "to turn to," *a întoarce* "to turn," *a o lua spre / la (stânga, dreapta, înainte, în sus, în jos)* "turn to / make left, right, straight, up, down," *a coborî* "to descend," *a urca (o stradă / într-un autobuz)* "to go up on a street / to get to a bus," *a opri (la)* "to stop (at)"

In Romanian, giving directions using verbs is usually done in the **imperative voice**. It is often used to give specific instructions, directions, or commands and it is usually a more direct way to offer information.

The imperative voice that uses verbs to give directions can be used as follows:

1. **In the affirmative form** - when you want to give commands or instructions: **Întoarce** la prima intersecție. "Turn at the first intersection."
2. **In the negative form** - it is usually constructed as: "do" + "not" + infinitive verb. It is normally used as an interdiction or a strong recommendation against a certain action: **Nu vira** la dreapta aici! "Don't turn right here!"

In order to avoid being perceived as too direct, you can use expressions like:

1. *ai putea să...* "you could...,"
2. *cred că poți să...* "I believe that you can...,"
3. *o să trebuiască să...* "you will need to...,"
4. *e o idee bună să* "It is a good idea to..."

**Here are some sample sentences to get more acquainted with these types of verbs:**

1. ***Urmărește*** *taxi-ul din față până la următoarea intersecție.*  
"Follow the taxi ahead until the next intersection."
2. ***Nu opri*** *mașina pe trecerea de pietoni!*  
"Don't stop the car on the crosswalk!"
3. ***Cred că trebuie să coborâm*** *la următoarea stație.*  
"I think we should get off at the next station."

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. *Da. Este una aproape.*  
"Yes. There's one nearby."
2. *Și cum pot ajunge acolo?*  
"And how can I get there?"
3. *Luăți-o prima la stânga la semafor, mergeți drept înainte și este pe dreapta.*  
"Take the first left at the traffic lights, go straight ahead, then it's on the right."

**Sample Sentences:**

---

1. *În ce direcție e primăria?*  
"In what direction is the Town Hall?"
2. *Căutați prima stradă la dreapta.*  
"Look for the first street to the right."
3. *Mergeți în jos tot înainte până dați de o benzinărie.*  
"Go down straight ahead until you reach a gas station."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Asking for help in Romania

---

Romanians are very hospitable and friendly people, especially with foreigners, because they love to discover more about the world, the cultures and the people out there. Making Romanian friends is not an easy task, because you have to earn their trust first, but when you do, you will be treated as part of the family. If you find yourself in a delicate situation and you have to ask a Romanian for help, you should know that usually they are willing to do it, but there are a couple of things you should know beforehand: if your request is important, big or requires a lot of effort, you should consider a Romanian with whom you are the closest to, because they would do anything for their friends. When you express your request, try to be simple, direct, and precise with what you need, rather than trying to sugarcoat it. Comparing the people in Bucharest and the ones from the other cities in Romania, there is a very distinctive difference: if you ask directions in the capital city, people are more likely to turn you down because they don't have time to explain things, but in the other cities, however, people take their time to talk to you, help you out, and may even offer recommendations (the people in Transylvania are a great example). The best approach when asking Romanians for help is to expose the situation directly, put everything on the table, and most importantly, be careful not to break their trust (for example, if you are borrowing money, be specific when you will be giving it back, because they will hold you accountable for that). Lastly, don't ask the advice of a Romanian if you don't plan to listen to it, because they get very offended in this particular situation.

### Useful expression:

1. *Mă puteți ajuta?*  
"Can you help me?"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #22

# What is the Purpose of Your Visit to Romania?

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

# 22

## ROMANIAN

1. Responsabil: Bună ziua, bine ați venit în Țara Minunilor!
2. Andreea: Bine v-am găsit!
3. Responsabil: Care este scopul călătoriei dumneavoastră?
4. Andreea: Turism.
5. Responsabil: Cât veți sta?
6. Andreea: Timp de aproape 10 (zece) zile.
7. Responsabil: Aveți vreun lucru de declarat?
8. Andreea: Nu, domnule.
9. Responsabil: Totul este în regulă atunci. Să aveți o ședere minunată!
10. Andreea: Vă mulțumesc mult!

## ENGLISH

1. Person in charge: Hello, welcome to Wonderland!
2. Andreea: Nice to be here!
3. Person in charge: What is the purpose of your trip?
4. Andreea: Tourism.

CONT'D OVER

5. Person in charge: How long are you going to stay?
6. Andreea: For about 10 days.
7. Person in charge: Do you have anything to declare?
8. Andreea: No, sir.
9. Person in charge: Everything is alright then. Have a wonderful stay.
10. Andreea: Thank you.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
Bine ați venit	welcome	phrase
scop	purpose	noun
călătorie	trip	noun
turism	tourism	noun
a sta	to stay	verb
țară	land	noun
minune	wonder	noun
ședere	stay	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Bine ați venit la noi acasă!</b> "Welcome to our home!"</p>	<p><b>Din momentul în care am ajuns ușă, funcționarul m-a întrebat scopul vizitei mele.</b> "As soon as I reached the door the staff asked me the purpose of my visit. "</p>
<p><b>Voi vizita Africa în cursul viitoarei mele călătorii în jurul lumii.</b> "I will visit Africa during my next trip around the world."</p>	<p><b>El spune că sportul lui preferat este turismul.</b> "He says his favorite sport is tourism."</p>
<p><b>Ea nu stă niciodată prea mult în același loc.</b> She never stays long at the same place.</p>	<p><b>Pot să stau în aceeași cameră cu tine.</b> "I can stay in the same room with you."</p>
<p><b>Mulți români consideră că aici este țara tuturor posibilităților.</b> "Many Romanians consider that here is the land of all possibilities."</p>	<p><b>A avut parte de tot felul de minuni acolo.</b> "He had all sorts of wonders there."</p>
<p><b>A avut o ședere plăcută la hotelul Aro din Brașov.</b> "We had a pleasant stay at the Aro hotel in Brasov."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### ***O ședere minunată*** "A wonderful stay"

It is an expression built from the feminine noun in singular form *ședere* "stay" preceded by its indefinite article *o* "an" and followed by the feminine singular form of the adjective *minunat* "wonderful." It literally means "A wonderful stay."

This expression is used to greet someone that will stay at your place, especially in more formal situations, such as in a hotel or a similar accommodation. You as a host wish your guest to enjoy his experience while staying at your place. A more common expression, without that much emphasis, is *O ședere plăcută* "a pleasant stay."

### For example:

1. *Vă doresc o ședere minunată la noi în hotel.*  
"I wish you a wonderful stay in our hotel."

### ***Bine v-am găsit!***

**"It's nice to be here!"**

It is a common expression using a structure made out of the *bine* "well" adverb of modality, the pronoun *v-* "you" and the verb *a găsi* "to find" in the simple past form for first person. The literal translation would be "Well I found you!" meaning the greeting expression "It's nice to be here!"

This is used by someone arriving at a place that he or she intends to stay at, such as a visit or accomodation place. It expresses a polite manner of greeting your host.

### For example:

1. *Bine v-am găsit! Mă bucur că am ajuns în sfârșit să vă văd.*  
"It's nice to be here! I am glad I finally got to see you."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Phrases Used to Express Uncertain Concepts**

### ***Aveți vreun lucru de declarat?***

**"Do you have anything to declare?"**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

1. use the indefinite pronouns *vreun* and *vreo* - "any"
2. use the adverb *cam* "about" to express general approximations
3. use *timp plus de*, "for" to express how long something lasts

---

### **1. How to use the indefinite pronouns *vreun* and *vreo* - "any"**

---

The indefinite pronouns *vreun*, *vreo* "any" are used in the Romanian language to express different uncertain concepts or ideas.

But before describing the use of these pronouns, it is important to mention that Romanians also use "vreo" (the feminine singular unarticulated) as an adverb of

approximation, this being the English equivalent of "some" (e.g. *Ia și tu vreo 2 kilograme de cartofi de la magazin.* "Buy some potatoes from the store.").

**The declension for the pronoun *vreun* "any" is as follows:**

Case	Gender/Number	Singular	Plural
<b>Nominative - Accusative</b>	<b>Masculine (unarticulated/ articulated)</b>	<i>vreun</i> "any" <i>vreunul</i> "any"	- <i>vreunii</i> "any"
<b>Nominative - Accusative</b>	<b>Feminine (unarticulated/ articulated)</b>	<i>vreo</i> "any" <i>vreuna</i> "any"	- <i>vreunele</i> "any"
<b>Genitive - Dative</b>	<b>Masculine (unarticulated/ articulated)</b>	<i>vreunii</i> "any" <i>vreunuia</i> "any"	- <i>vreunora</i> "any"
<b>Genitive - Dative</b>	<b>Feminine (unarticulated/ articulated)</b>	<i>vreunei</i> "any" <i>vreuneia</i> "any"	- <i>vreunelor</i> "any"

When it comes to expressing uncertainty, the ***vreo*** or ***vreun*** pronouns are often used in the interrogative form:

1. Asking for an opinion: *Tu ai vreo părere despre contextul politic din România?* "Do you have any opinions on the political context in Romania?"
2. Asking for a specialist in a certain context: *E vreun doctor care să ne ajute aici?* "Are there any doctors here?"

**Down below there are 3 sample sentences that illustrate uncertain concepts using *vreun*, *vreo* "any:"**

1. *Poți găsi vreun șervețel pe masă?*  
"Can you find any napkins on the table?"
2. *Știi vreo avocată bună în București?*  
"Do you know any good lawyers in Bucharest?"
3. *Ai vreun număr de taxi la care pot să sun?*  
"Do you have any taxi numbers that I can call?"

## 2. How to use the adverb *cam* "about" to express general approximations

When you want to talk about general approximations in Romanian, the most common way to do it is through the help of **cam** "about." It can be used in various types of situations:

1. **To express uncertain numerical quantities** - e.g. *Avem nevoie **cam** de 10 scaune pentru invitații noștri.* "We need about 10 chairs for our guests."
2. **To express an uncertain count** - e.g. *Toarnă **cam** o jumătate de lingură de smântână în ciorbă.* "Pour about half a spoon of sour cream in the soup."
3. **To talk about an uncertain time** - e.g. *la o pauză **cam** pe la ora cinci și apoi întoarce-te la antrenament.* "Take a break at about five o'clock and then get back to practice."

Basically, the adverb *cam* "about" takes the place of the word "approximately" in the Romanian language and it is used as follows:

---

approximation expressed through **cam** "about" + numeral

---

**Here are some sample sentences of using *cam* "about" to express approximations:**

1. *Ai nevoie **cam** de 20 de litri de benzină ca să mergi până la mare.*  
"You need about 20 liters of gasoline to go to the seaside."
2. *Comanda de pizza ajunge **cam** în 10 minute.*  
"The pizza order will arrive in about 10 minutes".
3. *Piscina are **cam** 30 de metri adâncime.*  
"The pool is about 30 meters deep."

### **3. How to use *timp plus de*, "for" to express how long something lasts**

---

In order to express how long something lasts in the Romanian language, you are recommended to use the phrase **timp de** "for." The phrase is used in order to express a specific duration in time in the following contexts:

1. **Cooking instructions:** *Fierbe oul **timp de** 12 minute ca să îți iasă perfect.* "Boil the egg for 12 minutes for it to be perfect."
2. **Offering directions:** *Mergi **timp de** 30 de minute și vei găsi parcul Herăstrău.* "Walk for 30 minutes and you will reach Herăstrău Park."
3. **Informational use:** *Trenul va staționa **timp de** 5 minute.* "The train will stand for 5 minutes."

The most common structure pattern that is used with  **timp de**  "for" is:

---

verb +  **timp de**  "for" + numeral + noun

---

**Here are 3 examples that can help you get a better understanding of how this expression is used:**

1. *Am lucrat în compania asta timp de 10 ani de zile.*  
"I've worked in this company for 10 years."
2. *Am așteptat timp de 15 minute și apoi am plecat.*  
"I waited for 15 minutes, and then I left".
3. *Exersează la vioară timp de 2 ore și apoi poți să te joci!*  
"Practice the violin for 2 hours and then you can play!"

**Examples from the Dialogue:**

1. *Cât veți sta?*  
"How long are you going to stay?"
2. *Timp de aproape 10 (zece) zile.*  
"For about 10 days."
3. *Aveți vreun lucru de declarat?*  
"Do you have anything to declare?"

**Sample Sentences:**

---

1. *Cred că vom sta vreo trei zile acolo.*  
"I think we will be out there for about three days."
2. *Ne-a costat cam o mie de lei totul.*  
"It cost us about one thousand lei altogether."
3. *Am stat în Japonia timp de un an.*  
"I stayed in Japan for one year."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

**Dealing with authorities in Romania**

---

Even though Romania is part of the European Union, the local authorities and government policies regarding the citizens haven't reached the EU standards yet. Almost three decades have passed since the 1989 Revolution, but the healthcare, legal, procedural, economic systems have been poorly improved by government officials. Probably the most important thing you should know is to arm yourself with patience and even more patience. The public service is only partially digitalized, so you would have to sit in long lines and fill out a lot of paperwork in order to benefit from a public service. Additionally, it's recommended to always check the website of the institution you have to go to for the papers needed for the specific task you need to get done. There are many cases when the papers need to be gathered from other public institutions and forgetting about one can lead to spending more time on the process. The same description applies to the police system in Romania. There is a lot of paperwork to be done if you find yourself in a situation to deal with the local law enforcement. If you have any goods or property stolen, for example, the case wouldn't be considered a high priority by the police. The healthcare system is also not functioning so well in Romania, as the government doesn't see it as a priority for the state's investments. As a result, doctors go to other countries to practice and many of the ones that stay and work in state hospitals often need an additional financial incentive in order to consult or operate. Despite this current situation, there is a wave of young Romanians that are unsatisfied with this behavior and plan to change the system slowly and steadily.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *răbdarea trece marea*  
"patience is a virtue"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #23

# Finding a Place to Call Home in Romania

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 9 Cultural Insight

# 23

## ROMANIAN

1. Agent imobiliar: Ce fel de apartament căutați?
2. Masanobu: Vreau un apartament spațios, cu trei camere.
3. Agent imobiliar: Avem un apartament cu trei camere, mobilat, în Piața Victoriei.
4. Masanobu: Cât este chiria?
5. Agent imobiliar: 600 (șase sute) de euro pe lună. Când doriți să vă mutați?
6. Masanobu: Începând cu luna viitoare. Dar este prea scump.
7. Agent imobiliar: Putem negocia.
8. Masanobu: Atunci aș dori să îl văd, se poate?
9. Agent imobiliar: Sigur, domnule.

## ENGLISH

1. Real Estate Agent: What kind of apartment are you looking for?
2. Masanobu: I want a spacious apartment with three rooms.
3. Real Estate Agent: We have a furnished, three bedroom apartment in Victoriei Square.
4. Masanobu: How much is the rent?

CONT'D OVER

5. Real Estate Agent: 600 Euro per month. When do you want to move in?
6. Masanobu: Starting next month. But it's too expensive.
7. Real Estate Agent: We can negotiate.
8. Masanobu: Then I would like to see it, can I?
9. Real Estate Agent: Certainly, sir.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a vrea	want	verb
cameră	room	noun
Euro	Euro	noun
pe	on	preposition
a începe	start	verb
scump	expensive	adjective
a negocia	negotiate	verb
spațios	spacious	adjective
mobilat	furnished	adjective
lună	moon, month	noun
Fel	kind	noun
chirie	rent	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Nu vreau să își cheltuiască toți banii pe dulciuri.</b></p> <p>"I don't want them to spend all their money on sweets."</p>	<p><b>Nu vreau să schimb 100 de dolari.</b></p> <p>"I don't want to exchange \$100."</p>
<p><b>Câte persoane sunt în cameră?</b></p> <p>How many people are there in the room?</p>	<p><b>Aceasta este o cameră pentru nefumători.</b></p> <p>This is a room for non-smokers.</p>
<p><b>Trebuie să fac curățenie în cameră în seara asta.</b></p> <p>I need to clean up my room tonight.</p>	<p><b>De câți euro ai nevoie?</b></p> <p>"How many euros do you need?"</p>
<p><b>A dat câte doi lei pe pereche.</b></p> <p>"He paid two lei per pair."</p>	<p><b>El a început să lucreze la stația de benzină acum o săptămână.</b></p> <p>"He started working at the gas station a week ago."</p>
<p><b>Acest tren este foarte scump.</b></p> <p>This train is very expensive.</p>	<p><b>Este scump să locuiești în Tokyo.</b></p> <p>It is expensive to live in Tokyo.</p>
<p><b>Ai negociat foarte bine prețul acestei mașini.</b></p> <p>"You negotiated very well for the price of this car."</p>	<p><b>Locuim într-o casă foarte spațioasă, cu curte.</b></p> <p>"We live in a very spacious house with a courtyard."</p>
<p><b>A închiriat un apartament complet mobilat.</b></p> <p>"He rented a fully furnished apartment."</p>	<p><b>Mai are o lună până pleacă în Japonia.</b></p> <p>"He has one month left until he goes to Japan."</p>
<p><b>Ce frumoasă este luna în seara aceasta!</b></p> <p>The moon is so beautiful this evening.</p>	<p><b>Au deserturi de multe feluri.</b></p> <p>"They have many kinds of desserts."</p>

---

## Nu își mai permite să dea chiria acolo.

"He can not afford to pay the rent there anymore."

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

### **ce fel de...** **"what kind of..."**

It is an interrogative expression made out of the relative pronoun **ce** "what," the neuter noun **fel** "kind" in its singular form, and the preposition **de** "of." Literally, the translation of this structure would be "what kind of..."

This is used to ask your interlocutor details about something specific that your conversation is referring to. The answer would therefore provide details about the kind of object or activity he or she is referring.

#### **For example:**

1. *Nu știe ce fel de haine să își ia la ea.*  
"She does not know what kind of clothes to take with her."

### **pe lună** **"per month"**

It is an adverbial structure made out of the preposition **pe** "on" and the feminine noun **lună** "month" in its singular form. It literally translates as "on month," and means "per month."

It is used to refer to the occurrence of a thing or action which is on a monthly basis. In this case, it refers to the payment of the rent and relates to the amount that is recurrently paid with this frequency. A form that is used in more commercial situations is *per lună* "per month," thus changing the preposition *pe* "on" with *per* "per" but with a similar meaning.

#### **For example:**

1. *Câștigă cu două sute de euro mai mult pe lună la noul ei loc de muncă.*  
"She earns two hundred euros more per month at her new job."

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Negotiating**

***Este prea scump. "It is too expensive."  
Putem negocia. "We can negotiate."***

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

- 1. use the adverb *începând cu*, "starting from...," to express a starting period**
  - 2. use *prea scump* - "too expensive"**
  - 3. talk about different types of rooms in apartments**
- 

## **1. How to use the adverb *începând cu*, "starting from...," to express a starting period**

---

Generally in the Romanian language, when you want to express the starting point of a certain event, situation, or scenario in time, you are recommended to use the expression ***începând cu*** "starting from."

The structure that has an adverbial function is made from the gerund form of the verb *a începe* "to start" and the preposition *cu* "with" (although it is translated as "starting from").

**The general formula of using this phrase is:**

---

***începând cu*** "starting with" + quantifiable noun/pronoun/numeral

---

**Below you can find 3 sample sentences that will better illustrate the phrase:**

1. *Prețurile mașinilor se reduc **începând cu** 30 decembrie.*  
"The car prices are decreasing starting with the 30th of December."
2. *Te așteptăm la noi în magazin **începând cu** ora 10 dimineața.*  
"We are waiting for you at our store starting from 10 in the morning."
3. *Hai să reducem din cheltuieli **începând cu** luna mai.*  
"Let's cut on our expenses starting from May."

## **2. How to use *prea scump* - "too expensive"**

---

The Romanian phrase **prea scump** "too expensive" is formed from the adverb **prea** "too" and an adjective **scump** "expensive." It is normally used to express that the price of an item is either over budget or over the perceived level of its actual price.

When a person initiates a negotiation, he/she can use this phrase to express his / her intention for reaching out for a cheaper version of the product/service/business - e.g. *E prea scump pentru mine, aveți cumva o versiune mai ieftină?* "It's too expensive for me, do you have a cheaper version?"

When talking about negotiations, it's also important to have in mind the antonym of this phrase which is *prea ieftin* "too cheap."

### **Basically, a sentence using this phrase follows the syntax:**

---

the verb *a fi* "to be" + *prea scump/-ă/-i/-e\** "too expensive"

---

\* The adjective *scump* "expensive" takes the form (gender and number) according to the noun it is referring to.

### **In order for you to better understand these contexts, here are 3 sample sentences:**

1. *Această bluză este **prea scumpă**.*  
"This blouse is too expensive."
2. *Mi se pare **prea scump** să investești într-un teren acum.*  
"I think it's too expensive to invest in land right now."
3. *Buchetul de flori e **prea scump**. Vă plătesc jumătate din prețul acestuia.*  
"This flower bouquet is too expensive. I will pay you half the price."

### **3. How to talk about different types of rooms in apartments**

---

When you find yourself in a discussion with a Romanian about the rooms in an apartment, the following words can come in handy:

#### **Common adjectives:**

1. *mare* "big" ≠ *mic* "small"
2. *vechi* "old" ≠ *nou* "new"
3. *învechit* "outdated" ≠ *renovat* "renovated"
4. *curat* "clean" ≠ *murdar* "dirty"

5. *confortabil, comod* "comfortable" ≠ *neconfortabil, incomod* "uncomfortable"
6. *scump* "expensive" ≠ *ieftin* "cheap"
7. *frumos* "beautiful" ≠ *urât* "ugly"
8. *plăcut* "pleasant" ≠ *neplăcut* "unpleasant"

### Common verbs:

1. *a curăți, a curăța* "to clean" ≠ *a murdări* "to make a mess"
2. *a renova* "renovate"
3. *a mobila* "to furnish"
4. *a vopsi* "to paint"
5. *a mătura* "to sweep"

### Common expressions:

1. *a mări (o cameră, curtea, garajul...)* "to extend (a room, the yard, the garage...)"
2. *o casă nou construită* "a newly built house"
3. *a consolida o casă* "to consolidate a house"
4. *un preț rezonabil* "a reasonable price"

**When talking about the rooms in your home, you can relate to the following basic elements:**

<b>English word describing the rooms in an apartment</b>	<b>Romanian word describing the rooms in an apartment</b>
<i>sufragerie</i>	"living room"
<i>dormitor</i>	"bedroom"
<i>baie</i>	"bathroom"

<i>bucătărie</i>	"kitchen"
<i>balcon</i>	"balcony"
<i>debara</i>	"storage closet"
<i>beci</i>	"basement"
<i>ușa de la intrare</i>	"front door"
<i>tavan</i>	"ceiling"
<i>podea</i>	"floor"
<i>pereți</i>	"walls"
<i>întrerupător de lumină</i>	"light switch"
<i>robinet de apă</i>	"water tap"
<i>cadă</i>	"bathtub"

## Examples from the Dialogue

1. *Cât este chiria?*  
"How much is the rent?"
2. *Începând cu luna viitoare. Dar este prea scump.*  
"Starting next month. But it's too expensive."
3. *Putem negocia.*  
"We can negotiate."

## Sample Sentences:

1. *Dacă închiriez pe termen lung, scădeți chiria?*  
"If I rent in the long term, will you lower the rent?"
2. *Până la cât se poate negocia?*  
"How much can we negotiate this?"
3. *Haideți să găsim o soluție din care să câștigăm amândoi.*  
"Let's find a solution so we can both win."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

## Cities and architecture in Romania

---

Romania has a spectacular and diverse pallet of attractions, from historical towns of beautiful natural sceneries to urban cities. More and more tourists are coming each year to Romania to discover the Carpathian Mountains, medieval cities, the Danube River, UNESCO World Heritage sites, or the Black Sea. When it comes to urban attractions, the most popular destination for tourists is Dracula's Castle, due to the urban legend around one of Romanian's medieval kings, Vlad Dracul Tepes. The Romanian Orthodox churches and Citadel architecture is also a popular attraction for tourists. This includes cities like Brasov, Sighisoara, Sibiu, Cluj-Napoca, Alba-Iulia or Iasi. Furthermore, modern urban cities are a veritable tourist destination as well, counting cities like Timisoara, Bucharest, or Constanta. The capital city, located in the southern region of the country, is the largest city in Romania with over 2.1 million people living there. Here, in Bucharest, tourists can explore the historic city center, visit the Palace of Parliament (known as the 2nd largest building in the world after the Pentagon), or enjoy the colorful night life in the old town city center. Brasov and Sibiu are two sister medieval cities that are popular for the amazing architecture, abundant history, and splendid mountain scenery of the Carpathians around them. The Romanian countryside is also an amazing destination for tourists as they can discover the various traditional houses, the local traditions, and what it's like to live as a regular Romanian. The people in towns and villages are warm, welcoming and they will have you for dinner if you go visiting in their area. There are more traditionalistic areas, such as Maramures, where you can enjoy the old peasant experience similar to how it was hundreds of years ago.

### Useful expression:

1. *la țară*  
"in the countryside"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #24

## Offering an Apology in Romanian

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 4 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

# 24

## ROMANIAN

1. Mihai:                   Îmi cer scuze că te-am călcat pe coadă ieri.
2. Masanobu:            M-ai călcat pe coadă?
3. Mihai:                   Ah, e o expresie în română. Înseamnă "a deranja pe cineva."
4. Masanobu:            Ah, te referi la întrerupere. Nu e nicio problemă.
5. Mihai:                   Mă bucur să aud.

## ENGLISH

1. Mihai:                   I'm sorry I stepped on your tail yesterday.
2. Masanobu:            You stepped on my tail?
3. Mihai:                   Oh, it's a Romanian idiom. It means "to trample on someone's toes."
4. Masanobu:            Oh, you mean the interruption. Don't worry!
5. Mihai:                   I'm glad to hear that.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Romanian</b>	<b>English</b>	<b>Class</b>
a însemna	to mean, signify	verb
a călca	step	verb
a deranja	disturb	verb
bucura	glad	adjective

a-și cere scuze	apologize	phrase
coadă	tail	noun
expresie	idiom	noun
întrerupere	interruption	noun

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Am întrebat-o ce înseamnă faptul că se aprinde acest bec.</b></p> <p>"I asked her what it means when this light bulb is on."</p>	<p><b>Ce înseamnă aceasta în română?</b></p> <p>What does this mean in Romanian?</p>
<p><b>Un inel de logodnă înseamnă că o femeie este pe cale să se căsătorească.</b></p> <p>An engagement ring signifies that a woman is engaged to be married.</p>	<p><b>Ce înseamnă "merci" în franceză?</b></p> <p>What does 'merci' mean in French?</p>
<p><b>A călcat pe covorul roșu cu mândrie.</b></p> <p>"He stepped on the red carpet with pride."</p>	<p><b>Ei deranjează vecinii cu muzică tare în fiecare weekend.</b></p> <p>"They disturb the neighbors with loud music every weekend."</p>
<p><b>Ne bucurăm că ai putut ajunge astă-seară.</b></p> <p>"We are glad you could come tonight."</p>	<p><b>Ne cerem scuze pentru această eroare.</b></p> <p>"We are sorry for this error."</p>
<p><b>Păunul are o coadă foarte frumoasă.</b></p> <p>"The peacock has a very beautiful tail."</p>	<p><b>Știe multe expresii din zona Maramureșului.</b></p> <p>"He knows many idioms from the Maramures area."</p>

---

**A fost o întrerupere de câteva secunde apoi a continuat cu muzică simfonică.**

"There was an interruption of a few seconds; then it continued with symphonic music."

---

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

***a călca pe coadă***  
**"to trample on somebody's toes"**

It is an expression made out of the verb ***a călca*** "to step," the preposition ***pe*** "on" and the feminine noun ***coadă*** "tail." It literally means "to step on tail" and is the Romanian equivalent of the English expression "to trample on somebody's toes."

This expression is used when referring to the situation in which someone did something that offended another. It is a rather informal expression and not common for more formal contexts. A more suitable alternative for such a situation would be *a supăra* "to upset," *a ofensa* "to offend," or *a enerva* "to annoy."

### **For example:**

1. *S-a simțit călcat pe coadă după atâtea ironii primite.*  
"He felt trampled on (his toes) after all the irony he had received."

***a se referi la ceva***  
**"to mean something"**

It is an expression composed by the reflexive form of the verb ***a (se) referi*** "to refer (to him/herself)," the conjunction ***la*** "to" and the indefinite pronoun ***ceva*** "something." It literally means "to refer yourself to something."

It is used to highlight the subject of an informing action. It is used in a structure of verb + nominal group in accusative.

### **For example:**

1. *Când am zis că nu mai pot, m-am referit la faptul că mi-e somn.*  
"When I said I cannot anymore, I meant that I was sleepy."

## GRAMMAR

**The Focus of This Lesson is Apologizing**

**Ah, te referi la întrerupere. Nu e nicio problemă.  
"Oh, you mean the interruption. Don't worry!"**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

- 1. use *îmi cer scuze*, "I'm sorry," and when to use it**
  - 2. use *vă rog să mă scuzați* - "(please) excuse me"**
  - 3. express regret in indirect ways**
- 

## **1. How to use *îmi cer scuze*, "I'm sorry," and when to use it**

---

The Romanian expression ***îmi cer scuze*** "I'm sorry," is one of the most common ways to ask for an apology, if you ever find yourself in such a situation. It is normally used in cordial conversations, when the problem is rather unintentional. Romanians normally use them when addressing an apology to strangers or acquaintances.

Usually, the phrase is followed by the reason why you are apologizing and has this structure:

---

***îmi cer scuze*** "I am sorry," + *pentru (că) / că* "for / that"

---

**Here are some sample sentence of using this phrase:**

- îmi cer scuze*** *pentru întârziere, am fost prins în trafic.*  
"I am sorry for being late, I was stuck in traffic."
- Am uitat să plătesc factura, **îmi cer scuze.***  
"I forgot to pay the bill, I am sorry."
- Vai, **îmi cer scuze** că v-am vărsat cafeaua.*  
"Oh, I am sorry I spilled your coffee."

## **2. How to use *vă rog să mă scuzați* - "(please) excuse me"**

---

If you want to express your apology in a more formal way given the age or social status of the interlocutor, the most recommended expression to use is: ***vă rog să mă scuzați*** "(please) excuse me." It is a much more polite way to ask for an apology and it is an expression that is mostly used with strangers.

Usually, if you use this expression, you are not required to say the reason why you

are apologizing, as it is self-implied that the interlocutor is aware of the situation.

A special case in the Romanian language: when you are addressing a person that is providing a service, it is polite to start the conversation with **vă rog să mă scuzați** "(please) excuse me" in order to apologize for disturbing their daily routine.

**Below you can find 3 sample sentences in order to better understand how the phrase is used:**

1. *Ups, v-am lovit din greșeală, **vă rog să mă scuzați.***  
"Oops, I hit you by mistake, please excuse me."
2. ***Vă rog să mă scuzați,** puteți să-mi spuneți unde găsesc legumele?*  
"Please excuse me, can you tell me where I can find the vegetables?"
3. *V-am dat comanda greșită, **vă rog să mă scuzați.***  
"I gave you the wrong order, please excuse me."

### 3. How to express regret in indirect ways

---

There are many verbs and phrases Romanians use to express their feelings of regret.

Here are the most common of them:

1. *a scuza* "to excuse"
2. *a-i părea rău* "to be sorry"
3. *regret* "regret"
4. *din păcate / din nefericire* "unfortunately"
5. *nu a fost intenția mea să...* "it wasn't my intention to..."
6. *a fost o neînțelegere* "it was a misunderstanding"
7. *nu-i nimic* "it's nothing"
8. *nu-i nici o problemă* "there's no problem"
9. *nu vă faceți griji* "don't worry about it"
1. *e în ordine* "it's ok"
- 0.

Although, in some situations, you can consider the following specific structure to **indirectly transmit your feelings of regret:**

---

Personal pronoun + verb in conditional mode (expressing wish) + verb in conjunctive mode

e.g. *Mi-ar fi plăcut să nu uit...* "I would have liked not to forget ...," *Ne-am fi dorit să nu ajungem aici...* "We would not have wanted to get here..."

---

### Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Îmi cer scuze că te-am călcat pe coadă ieri.*  
"I'm sorry I stepped on your tail yesterday."
2. *Ah, te referi la întrerupere. Nu e nicio problemă.*  
"Oh, you mean the interruption. Don't worry!"
3. *Mă bucur să aud.*  
"I'm glad to hear that."

### Sample Sentences:

---

1. *Îmi cer scuze dacă te-am supărat cu întrebarea asta.*  
"I apologize if I upset you with this question."
2. *I-a părut rău după ce i-a zis că e vina lui.*  
"He was sorry after he told him it was his fault."
3. *Haide să ne împăcăm, te rog*  
"Let's make up, please!"

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Managing conflicts

---

The first thing that you should know about Romanians is that they come from a Latin bloodline. As social studies have proven, Latin people are passionate about life, with strong emotions and a strong will against all odds. And that's what you would love about Romanians: they are welcoming and kind and they love to have foreign friends to share stories and experiences with. However, one other trait that can be observed in the behavior of many Romanians is their quickness to anger when a conflict arises. If you find yourself in a conflict with a Romanian that you just met, the best thing that you should do is to treat the situation with patience and let it wear off. They are stubborn in their beliefs, but if you are reasonable, they

won't hold a grudge. A great piece of advice here is to never make fun of a Romanian's family because that is one of their core values. They will take it extremely personally and conflict will arise. If you find yourself in the situation of having a conflict with a Romanian friend, there are a couple of things that you should know: Romanians have the tendency to bottle things up and if a conflict happens, they will bring up things from the past; they need time to process things out and cool off before having a mature conversation; and they can be reasoned with by having patience and a willingness to communicate. Therefore, if it doesn't work, you should put it on cultural differences and language barriers rather than the personality of the Romanian in front of you.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Linștește-te!*  
"Calm down!"

## LESSON NOTES

# Beginner S1 #25

## That's My Kind of Romanian Contest!

---

## CONTENTS

- 2 Romanian
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 5 Grammar
- 10 Cultural Insight

# 25

## ROMANIAN

1. Masanobu: Bună, ce ai făcut în weekend?
2. Andreea: Am văzut o piesă de teatru! Tu?
3. Masanobu: Eu am participat la un concurs de mâncat pizza.
4. Andreea: Da? Sunt sigură că ai luat un premiu!
5. Masanobu: Da, am terminat al 3-lea (treilea).
6. Andreea: Oh, felicitări! De ce nu ai ieșit primul?
7. Masanobu: Țin dietă, așa că am mâncat doar 4 (patru) pizza.

## ENGLISH

1. Masanobu: Hi, what did you do this weekend?
2. Andreea: I watched a theater play. You?
3. Masanobu: I participated in a pizza eating contest.
4. Andreea: You did? I'm sure you took a prize!
5. Masanobu: Yes, I finished 3rd.
6. Andreea: Wow, congratulations! How come you didn't come 1st?
7. Masanobu: I'm on a diet, so I only ate 4 pizzas.

## VOCABULARY

Romanian	English	Class
a vedea	to see	verb
piesă	play	noun
teatru	theater	noun
a participa	partake, to join	verb
a lua	take	verb
premiu	prize	noun
a termina	finish	verb
Felicitări!	Congratulations!	expression
a ține	hold	verb
weekend	weekend	noun
concurs	contest	noun
întâi	first	adverb

## SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p><b>Ei merg deseară la cinema să vadă un film de groază.</b></p> <p>"They're going to the cinema tonight to watch a horror movie."</p>	<p><b>Văd cerul.</b></p> <p>I see the sky.</p>
<p><b>Criticii apreciază noua ei piesă.</b></p> <p>"Critics are very fond of her new play."</p>	<p><b>Întotdeauna mi-a plăcut să merg la teatru.</b></p> <p>"I always enjoyed going to the theater."</p>
<p><b>Când era în școală, a participat la toate olimpiatdele posibile.</b></p> <p>"When he was in school, he participated in all available academic competitions."</p>	<p><b>Săptămâna viitoare vom juca fotbal. Vrei să participi și tu?</b></p> <p>"Next week we are going to play soccer. Do you want to join?"</p>

<p><b>Catolicii, în general, participă la multe sfinte împărtășanii, începând de la o vârstă fragedă.</b></p> <p>" Catholics generally partake in many of the holy sacraments starting at a very early age."</p>	<p><b>A luat multe fructe cu ea în excursie.</b></p> <p>"She took many fruits with her on the trip."</p>
<p><b>La fiecare concurs sportiv la care a participat, Mihai a plecat cu un premiu.</b></p> <p>"At each sporting contest he attended, Mihai got a prize."</p>	<p><b>A primit multe premii pentru poeziile sale creative.</b></p> <p>"He received a lot of prizes for his creative poems."</p>
<p><b>Te rog anunță-mă atunci când termini sarcina dată.</b></p> <p>"Please let me know when you have finished the task."</p>	<p><b>Felicitări! Ai câștigat o excursie la mare.</b></p> <p>"Congratulations! We won a trip to the sea."</p>
<p><b>El ține apă în frigider vara.</b></p> <p>"He keeps water in the refrigerator in the summer."</p>	<p><b>Abia aștept să vină weekendul.</b></p> <p>"I can hardly wait for the weekend."</p>
<p><b>Andrei s-a pregătit mult pentru acest concurs de dans contemporan.</b></p> <p>"Andrei has prepared a lot for this contemporary dance contest."</p>	<p><b>Andreea a participat în liceu la un concurs de frumusețe.</b></p> <p>"Andreea attended a beauty contest in high school."</p>
<p><b>Întotdeauna a ieșit primul la concursurile de atletism din școală.</b></p> <p>"He always came out first in athletic contests in school."</p>	<p><b>Mergem întâi să mâncăm?</b></p> <p>"Are we going to eat first?"</p>
<p><b>Nu vreau bilet la clasa întâi.</b></p> <p>"I don't want a First Class ticket."</p>	

## VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

## **Felicitări!** **"Congratulations!"**

It is a common way to address someone, used in imperative, and it uses the plural form of the feminine noun **felicitare** "congratulation." It literally means "Congratulations!"

It is used to express your positive appreciation toward someone's achievement by congratulating him or her about it.

### **For example:**

1. *Felicitări pentru noul job!*  
"Congratulations for your new job!"

## **De ce?** **"Why?"**

It is an interrogative expression formed by an adverbial structure followed by the interrogation mark. It contains the preposition **de** "of" and the relative pronoun **ce** "what." It literally says "of what?" and is translated in English as "why?"

You use it when you want to ask someone about the reasons behind something, with a curious attitude. In more formal situations, you can use *Din ce motive?* "On what grounds?" instead, as *de ce?* is very direct and more personal.

It also can express other attitudes such as surprise or shock (the speaker is not waiting for a specific answer, but is only expressing his or her feelings toward something he found out).

### **For example:**

1. *De ce nu vii pe la noi deseară?*  
"Why don't you come to us tonight?"

## GRAMMAR

### **The Focus of This Lesson is Ordinal Numbers, From 10 and Above**

***Am terminat al 3-lea (treilea).***  
**"I finished 3rd."**

---

**In this lesson, we will learn how to:**

- 1. review ordinal numbers**

## 2. form ordinal numbers from cardinal numbers

## 3. use ordinal numbers from 10 to 100

---

### 1. How to review ordinal numbers

---

The ordinal numbers indicate the order. These numerals have flection as any other adjective in Romanian language. They respond to the questions *al câtelea? a câta?* "which one in the order?"

Although, their declension can vary if they are expressed in an articulated or unarticulated manner.

The following rules can be used to formulate ordinal numbers in Romanian:

1. **Articulated** - e.g. *întâiul* "the first," *primul* "the first," *ultimul* "the last," *al douăzeci și șaptelea* "the twenty-seventh," *al o mielea* "the thousandth" (it is usually followed by an unarticulated noun - e.g. *primul pas* "the first step")
2. **Unarticulated (or indefinite article)** - e.g. *întâi*, *prim*, *ultim*, *secund*, *terț*, *zece*, *o mie* (it is usually preceded by an articulated noun - e.g. *locul zece* "the tenth place")

### Ordinal number from 1 to 10 chart

Number of order	Articulated	Unarticulated (or indefinite article)
<b>1</b>	masculine: singular <i>întâiul</i> , <i>primul</i> "the first" plural: <i>întâi</i> , <i>prim</i> "the first" feminine: singular <i>întâia</i> , <i>prima</i> "the first" plural: <i>întâiele</i> , <i>primele</i> "the first"	masculine: singular <i>întâi</i> , <i>prim</i> "first" / <i>unu</i> "one," plural: <i>întâi</i> , <i>primi</i> "first" / <i>unu</i> "one" feminine: singular <i>întâie</i> , <i>primă</i> "first" / <i>unu</i> "one," plural: <i>întâi</i> , <i>prime</i> / <i>unu</i> "one"

2	<p>masculine: singular <i>al doilea</i> "the second"          plural: (<i>cei de</i>) <i>al doilea</i>, "(of) the second"          feminine: singular <i>a doua</i> "the second"          plural: (<i>cele de</i>) <i>al doilea</i>, "(of) the second"</p>	<p>masculine: singular <i>secund</i> "second" / <i>doi</i> "two"          plural: <i>secunzi</i>, "second" / <i>doi</i> "two"          feminine: singular <i>secundă</i>, "second" / <i>doi</i> "two"          plural: <i>secunde</i> "second" / <i>doi</i> "two"</p>
3	<p>masculine: singular <i>al treilea</i> "the third"          plural: (<i>cei de</i>) <i>al treila</i>, "(of) the third"          feminine: singular <i>a treia</i> "the third"          plural: (<i>cele de</i>) <i>al treilea</i>, "(of) the third"</p>	<p>masculine: singular <i>terț</i> "the third" / <i>trei</i> "third"          plural: <i>terți</i> "the third" / <i>trei</i> "third"          feminine: singular <i>terță</i> "third" / <i>trei</i> "third"          plural: <i>terțe</i> "third" / <i>trei</i> "third"</p>
4	<p>masculine: singular <i>al patrulea</i> "the fourth"          plural: (<i>cei de</i>) <i>al patrulea</i>, "(of) the fourth"          feminine: singular <i>a patra</i> "the fourth"          plural: (<i>cele de</i>) <i>al patrulea</i>, "(of) the fourth"</p>	<p><i>patru</i> "fourth" for all forms</p>
5	<p>masculine: singular <i>al cincilea</i> "the fifth"          plural: (<i>cei de</i>) <i>al cincilea</i>, "(of) the fifth"          feminine: singular <i>a cincea</i> "the fifth"          plural: (<i>cele de</i>) <i>al cincilea</i>, "(of) the fifth"</p>	<p><i>cinci</i> "fifth" for all forms</p>
6	<p>masculine: singular <i>al șaselea</i> "the sixth"          plural: (<i>cei de</i>) <i>al șaselea</i>, "(of) the sixth"          feminine: singular <i>a șasea</i> "the sixth"          plural: (<i>cele de</i>) <i>al șaselea</i>, "(of) the sixth"</p>	<p><i>șase</i> "sixth" for all forms</p>

<b>7</b>	<p>masculine: singular <i>al șaptelea</i> "the seventh"          plural: <i>(cei de) al șaptelea</i>, "(of) the seventh"          feminine: singular <i>a șaptea</i> "the seventh"          plural: <i>(cele de) al șaptelea</i>, "(of) the seventh"</p>	<i>șapte</i> "seventh" for all forms
<b>8</b>	<p>masculine: singular <i>al optulea</i> "the eighth"          plural: <i>(cei de) al optulea</i>, "(of) the eighth"          feminine: singular <i>a opta</i> "the eighth" plural:  <i>(cele de) al optulea</i>, "(of) the eighth"</p>	<i>opt</i> "eighth" for all forms
<b>9</b>	<p>masculine: singular <i>al nouălea</i> "the ninth"          plural: <i>(cei de) al nouălea</i>, "(of) the ninth"          feminine: singular <i>a noua</i> "the ninth" plural:  <i>(cele de) al nouălea</i>, "(of) the ninth"</p>	<i>nouă</i> "ninth" for all forms
<b>10</b>	<p>masculine: singular <i>al zecelea</i> "the tenth"          plural: <i>(cei de) al zecelea</i>, "(of) the tenth"          feminine: singular <i>a zecea</i> "the tenth" plural:  <i>(cele de) al zecelea</i>, "(of) the tenth"</p>	<i>zece</i> "tenth" for all forms

## 2. How to form ordinal numbers from cardinal numbers

In order to transform a cardinal number into an ordinal one, the most common rule is to add the definite articles.

### Use of definite articles in forming cardinal numbers

---

For 1

Masculine singular: *Întâi* + *-ul* / *Prim* + *-ul* "the first"

Feminine singular: *Întâi* + *-a* / *Prim* + *-a* "the first"

For 2+\*

Masculine singular: Ordinal number = *al* + cardinal number + *-lea*

Feminine singular: Ordinal number = *a* + cardinal number + *-a*

\* There are some special cases though:

- For masculine ordinal numerals, in the case of *opt* "eight," *un milion* "one million" and *un miliard* "one billion," the *-u-* letter is added to form the ordinal number.

- For feminine ordinal numerals, in the case of *două* "two," *patru* "four," *mie* "thousand," and *milion* "million," the letter *-a* substitutes the final letter (e.g. *a doua* "the second").

---

## Use of definite articles in forming cardinal numbers

---

For 1+

For all forms: the cardinal number put after the noun for which is indicating the order is usually written in letters (e.g. *locul o mie* "the one-thousandth place")

---

## Here are some sample sentences using ordinal number

1. *A câștigat locul **al doilea** și a luat medalia de argint.*  
"He won the second place and took the silver medal."
2. *A cumpărat **a douăzeci și una** carte din clasament.*  
"He bought the twenty-first book in the rankings."
3. *Chiar dacă voi ieși **a o mie** tot merg la concurs.*  
"Even if I come in one thousandth place, I'm still going to the contest."

## 3. How to use ordinal numbers from 10 to 100

---

For ordinal numbers from 10 *zece* to 100 *o sută*, the same rules as listed above apply in forming the ordinal numerals from the cardinal ones.

Although, an important aspect should be mentioned: For the composed cardinal numbers (such as *douăzeci și cinci* "twenty-five"), the elements *-lea/-a* add only to the last number (e.g. *al douăzeci și cincilea* / *a douăzeci și cincea* "the twenty-fifth").

Listed below are a few relevant examples of ordinal numbers for cardinal

## numbers between 10 and 100:

1. *10 - al zecelea, a zecea* "the tenth"
2. *11 - al unsprezecelea, a unsprezecea* "the eleventh"
3. *12 - al doisprezecelea, a douăsprezecea* "the twelfth"
4. *20 - al douăzecilea, a douăzecea* "the twentieth"
5. *21- al douăzeci și unulea, a douăzeci și una* "the twenty-first"
6. *30 - al treizecilea, a treizecea* "the thirtieth"
7. *40 - al patruzecilea, a patruzecea* "the fortieth"
8. *100 - al o sutălea, a (o) suta* "the one hundredth"

## Examples from the Dialogue:

1. *Da, am terminat al 3-lea (treilea).*  
"Yes, I finished in 3rd."
2. *Oh, felicitări! De ce nu ai ieșit primul?*  
"Wow, congratulations! How come you didn't come in 1st?"

## Sample Sentences:

---

1. *A fost a doua din clasă la matematică.*  
"She was the second at math in her class."
2. *Ultimul dintre ei mi-a plăcut mai mult.*  
"I liked the last one more."
3. *A fost al cincisprezecelea sub linie la examenul de avocatură.*  
"It was the fifteenth below the line for the law exam."

## CULTURAL INSIGHT

### Recreational activities of Romanians in Romania

---

Romania has a lot to offer anyone who seeks to enjoy recreational activities: from outdoor sports to music festivals, urban exploring and country road trips, and much more. If you have the chance to go have fun with a Romanian, don't miss it; they really have great ideas and often you might find yourself discovering new experiences. Romanians love to party and that is the reason why music festivals, events, and clubs are very popular. You can count on a Romanian to party with you all night long and still be ready to do it again the next evening. They like to sing and to listen to music. Young Romanians are big fans of music concerts and festivals. However, surprisingly enough, television is one of the most popular forms of entertainment for Romanians. They watch the news, politics, entertainment shows, and/or TV series as a regular activity at the end of the day. Although, the younger generations choose to focus on experiences and choosing their own forms of entertainment, rather than the ones offered on TV, such as playing computer games or sports. The active and adventurous ones go exploring the great outdoors and all the marvelous places that the country has to offer. Mountain hiking is one of the most common outdoor activities that Romanians love to do and the Carpathians are a great spectacle of nature to explore. If you ever get the chance to have an experienced Romanian traveler as a guide, prepare yourself to be amazed by all the things that he has to show you about Romania.

### **Useful expression:**

1. *Hai să ne distrăm!*  
"Let's have fun!"



Intro

- |    |                                              |    |                                                    |
|----|----------------------------------------------|----|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1  | Investing in Some Romanian Fashions          | 13 | Going on an Overseas Trip from Romania             |
| 2  | An Invitation to a Romanian Party            | 14 | Talking About Your Relationship Status in Romanian |
| 3  | Do You Like Romanian Food?                   | 15 | Do You Like Your Romanian Neighborhood?            |
| 4  | Reserving a Table at a Romanian Restaurant   | 16 | Following Romanian Instructions                    |
| 5  | Ordering a Delicious Romanian Meal           | 17 | Why Isn't Your Romanian TV Working?                |
| 6  | Getting a Suit Tailored in Romania           | 18 | How Likely is Rain Today in Romania?               |
| 7  | The Perils of Hiking in Romania              | 19 | Getting Emotional in Romania                       |
| 8  | Talking About Your Daily Routine in Romanian | 20 | Doing the Math in Romania                          |
| 9  | Talking About Your Plans in Romanian         | 21 | Which Way are the Baked Goods in Romania?          |
| 10 | A Trip to the Romanian Countryside           | 22 | What is the Purpose of Your Visit to Romania?      |
| 11 | Getting a Snack in Romania                   | 23 | Finding a Place to Call Home in Romania            |
| 12 | What are Some Romanian Easter Traditions?    | 24 | Offering an Apology in Romanian                    |
|    |                                              | 25 | That's My Kind of Romanian Contest!                |